

VISIT...

LANZAROTE
Caliente.COM



LINGUAPHONE

Malay Course Handbook

Instructions
Translations
Vocabularies
Explanatory Notes

by ധരരസല

Malay Course Handbook

Instructions
Translations
Vocabularies
Explanatory Notes

The Linguaphone Institute

Linguaphone Institute Limited
St Giles House
50 Poland Street
London W1V 4AX

© MCMLXXVI Linguaphone Institute Limited, London

All rights reserved. No part of this publication, or related recorded material, may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior permission of Linguaphone Institute Limited.

This impression 1993

LSN OMAENH10

Printed and bound in Great Britain by
Biddles Ltd, Guildford and King's Lynn

The Linguaphone Academic Advisory Committee

Chairman:

Professor Sir Randolph Quirk, CBE, DLitt, FBA, Past President of the British Academy; sometime Vice-Chancellor, University of London; formerly Quain Professor of English, University College London; Hon. Fil. Dr (Lund, Uppsala); Hon. Doct. d'Univ. (Paris, Liège, Nijmegen); Hon. LLD (Reading); Hon. DLitt (Leicester, Salford, Newcastle, Durham, Glasgow, Bar Llan, Southern California, Brunel); Hon. DU (Bath, Essex, Open); Fellow of the Royal Belgian Academy of Sciences, of the Royal Swedish Academy, and of the Academia Europaea.

Members:

Dr Clare Burstall, BA, PhD, DSc, FBPsS, FCP, Director, National Foundation for Educational Research in England and Wales.

Professor Ian T M Gow, MA, PhD, Dip Jap, Director, Scottish Centre for Japanese Studies, and NatWest Professor of Contemporary Japanese Studies, University of Stirling; Member: Advisory Board CNAA; Council, British Association of Japanese Studies; UK-Japan 2000 Education Committee.

James Pailing, MA(Oxon), FBIM, Secretary to the Delegates, University of Oxford Delegacy of Local Examinations, Fellow of Keble College, Oxford.

Professor Nigel B R Reeves, OBE, MA, DPhil, FIL, FRSA, CIEx, Goethe Medaille of the Goethe Institute, Professor of German and Head of the Department of Modern Languages, Aston University, President, National Association of Language Advisers, Member of Board, Institute of Germanic Studies, University of London.

Professor J M Sinclair, MA, Professor of Modern English Language, University of Birmingham.

Professor Albert Sonnenfeld, AM, PhD (Princeton), Officier, Ordre des Palmes Académiques, Officier, Ordre des Arts et des Lettres, Professor of French and Comparative Literature, Chairman, Department of French and Italian, University of Southern California; formerly Professor of French and Chairman, Department of Romance Languages and Literatures, Princeton University.

Professor J C Wells, MA(Cantab), PhD(London), Professor of Phonetics in the University of London.

CONTENTS

	Page
The Bahasa Malaysia Course	9
Bahasa Malaysia Pronunciation	11
Instructions	13
Introduction: How to make the most of the Linguaphone Course	15
Preliminary Advice	16
Summary of Instructions	17
Instructions	18
Independent Self-Expression	21
The Sounds, and Pronunciation Generally	21
Final Note	22
Translations and Vocabularies	23
Explanatory Notes	93
Basic Rules of Grammar	97
Explanatory Notes (Introduction – Lesson 50)	102
Index	201
Malay Vocabulary	207

The Lingaphone Bahasa Malaysia Course can be used successfully by school children, adults, beginners, or those who have a basic knowledge of the language. It is designed for those who wish to learn the language in a practical way. The Course comprises two separate volumes: the first, 'Introduction to the Course', and the second, 'The Course'. The first volume is designed to help the student to get started with the language, and the second volume is designed to help the student to learn the language in a practical way. The Course is designed to be used in a classroom or at home. It is designed to be used by students who are learning the language for the first time, or who are learning the language for the first time in a practical way. The Course is designed to be used by students who are learning the language for the first time, or who are learning the language for the first time in a practical way.

The Bahasa Malaysia Course

The Lingaphone Bahasa Malaysia Course is designed to help the student to learn the language in a practical way. It is designed to be used in a classroom or at home. It is designed to be used by students who are learning the language for the first time, or who are learning the language for the first time in a practical way. The Course is designed to be used by students who are learning the language for the first time, or who are learning the language for the first time in a practical way.

Introduction

The Lingaphone Bahasa Malaysia Course is designed to help the student to learn the language in a practical way. It is designed to be used in a classroom or at home. It is designed to be used by students who are learning the language for the first time, or who are learning the language for the first time in a practical way. The Course is designed to be used by students who are learning the language for the first time, or who are learning the language for the first time in a practical way.

The Course

The Lingaphone Bahasa Malaysia Course is designed to help the student to learn the language in a practical way. It is designed to be used in a classroom or at home. It is designed to be used by students who are learning the language for the first time, or who are learning the language for the first time in a practical way. The Course is designed to be used by students who are learning the language for the first time, or who are learning the language for the first time in a practical way.

CONTENTS

Page	
9	The Bahasa Malaysia Course
11	Bahasa Malaysia Pronunciation
13	Instructions
15	Introduction: How to make the most of the Lingaphone Course
16	Preliminary Advice
17	Summary of Instructions
18	Instructions
21	Independent Self-Expression
21	The Sounds and Pronunciation (Cassette)
22	Final Note
23	Translations and Vocabulary
93	Explanatory Notes
97	Basic Rules of Grammar
102	Explanatory Notes (Introduction - Lesson 20)
201	Index
207	Malay Vocabulary

THE BAHASA MALAYSIA COURSE

The Linguaphone Bahasa Malaysia Course can be used equally well by school children, adults, beginners, or those who have a book knowledge of the language, but wish to become proficient in its oral application.

The Course comprises descriptive passages and conversations in natural, fluent, idiomatic speech which would be used by educated Malaysians in everyday situations in Malaysia or Singapore. With the standardisation of Bahasa Malaysia and Bahasa Indonesia, the Course can also be used with very minor modifications throughout the Indonesian territories. The self-correcting exercises and model answers will be important to those who wish to check their own progress.

Grammar

Grammatical points are introduced, as far as possible, incidentally into the text of each lesson and can be absorbed naturally by the student as he progresses through the Course. Although grammar is essential to the written language, of primary importance to every student is a mastery of basic conversation. Through this oral approach Bahasa Malaysia grammar will not prove a major obstacle as the student will acquire a 'feel' for the language and be able to recognise what is grammatically correct or incorrect. For purposes of reference, principal grammatical points are listed in the index.

Illustrations

The illustrations in the main textbook have been specially drawn by Malay artists for this Course. They are closely integrated with the text of each lesson, providing a visual aid to the text and stimulation for the student to attempt additional conversations of his own making.

This handbook

This contains instructions, lesson vocabularies, a sentence-by-sentence translation of each lesson and detailed explanations of grammatical points. A separate vocabulary list in Malay is provided.

Speech

So that the student can follow the spoken text easily, the first lessons are spoken slowly and distinctly. The rate of speech increases as the Course progresses, until in the more advanced lessons a natural rate of speech is achieved.

The first few lessons are spoken by the same two speakers, so that the student can concentrate on new sounds in the language rather than being confused by the introduction of different voices. Once familiar with the sounds, he will find the introduction of new voices, both appealing and challenging to his recognition powers.

As no two speakers of a language speak exactly alike, differences are found in pronunciation but can be accepted as a safe model for the average student. For those who make a special study of phonetics, the various differences of detail will provide ample scope for study.

New Spelling System

In 1972, the Government of Malaysia, in agreement with the Government of Indonesia, introduced a common spelling system for Bahasa Malaysia and Bahasa Indonesia. It is used in this course. Owing to the implementation of this system, some words have changed from the Romanised Malay spelling dating from British Colonial days in Malaysia.

A Practical Course

The student who masters this Course will have acquired a thorough practical knowledge of Bahasa Malaysia, both written and spoken. Not only should he have a good grasp of the grammar, but he will also have at his command an impressive store of useful words, common expressions and idioms. He will know the official language of Malaysia, used by all Government departments. For the serving civil servant and foreign investor a working knowledge of this language can not be underestimated.

Bahasa Malaysia Pronunciation

Bahasa Malaysia is not tonal, as is Thai or Chinese, nor has it guttural or nasal characteristics as have some European languages.

The formal written language of Malay literature is standard throughout Malaysia, but there are some spoken dialects peculiar to certain areas which may prove unintelligible to non-native speakers of Bahasa Malaysia. This is of course not uncommon with other languages of which English is no exception.

The Romanised form of spelling, employing all the letters of the English alphabet is used for this Course. This is the popular and official form adopted for Malaysia and Indonesia. Another, and the original form of written Bahasa Malaysia, is Jawi or Arabic script, which was brought to Malaysia by Arab traders along with the Moslem religion.

Both the Romanised spelling and Jawi are almost entirely phonic in character so that very few words, unlike English words, create problems with pronunciation. Exceptions are usually borrowed words from Arabic and with which even Malays are often inconsistent. The consonant 'k' according to its position in a word is probably the most difficult for Europeans (with the possible exception of Scots) to master, so a student should listen carefully and practise repeating words in which this consonant occurs. As a rough guide the 'k' at the end of a word is pronounced as a glottal stop as in Cockney *wo'* (*what*). If the 'k' is followed by the letter 'h' i.e. 'kh' it is pronounced as in the English word *loch*. Otherwise the 'k' has a hard sound as in the English word *kill*. Other consonants have standard pronunciations corresponding to the English consonants.

The vowels follow similar pronunciations to the European or rather Continental systems i.e. i = *ee* as in *sweet*, a = *ah* as in *father*, e = *eh* as in *say*, o = *oh* as in *so*, u = *oo* as in *soon* and compound vowels ai = *y* as in *try*, au = *ow* as in *how* and oi = *oy* as in *boy*.

An additional very short vowel is troublesome as it is represented in the new Romanised spelling also by the letter e (but known in Bahasa Malaysia as *e pepet*). The *e pepet* has hardly a sound at all, being little more than a slight grunt or explosion of breath as *er* in the English word *over*. (Unfortunately American students pronouncing this English word may lengthen

the sound value of *er* more than would an English student.) The sound, or rather lack of sound, is easily recognized when hearing a Malay pronounce a Bahasa Malaysia word such as **perang** as it would almost seem to be 'prang' to the listener. The letter *e*, as a very short sound (pepet), can generally be recognised when it occurs in closed syllables as above i.e. **perang**, where it is the next to last syllable. The *e* in the last syllable is almost invariably a long sound e.g. **leleh** where the first *e* is very short and the second long and the word is pronounced l'lay.

The sounds of Malay, together with the alphabet, have been recorded and you will find the text of this section (**Bunyi perkataan**) in your main textbook. Instructions on how to use the sounds section are given in the separate Students' Instructions book.

For students who have had some previous knowledge of the old Romanised form of Bahasa Malaysia, two changes for the new spelling system may appear strange on first acquaintance. They are: *c* which now has the sound *ch* (as in the English word *cheese*) and *sy* which is pronounced *sh* (as in the English word *shall*).

Introduction

How to make the MOST of the Linguaphone Course

You have now in your hands one of the finest means yet devised for the teaching of Modern Languages. Many years of experimental work with every known method of language teaching have gone into the preparation of this Linguaphone Course.

You can now command the services of some of the finest language teachers in the world—men and women who combine all the essential elements of the ideal teacher, the language they are wanting to teach you is their own language, as familiar to them as your own language is to you.

They are acknowledged experts in their language, understanding every aspect of it, widely read and widely versed in the culture of their own nation. And, most important of all, they are expert teachers.

They will show you at every point of your developing knowledge how your ear, eye, lips and memory can best and most effectively co-operate—as they did automatically when you learned as a child to speak your own language—to enable you to master every sound and every idiom of the foreign language you have chosen.

If you follow these Instructions carefully, even though at the moment you may not see the value of them, you will find that at every step of your progress, as on a path that climbs from a valley to the shoulder of a hill, you are offered an even and more fascinating prospect, but, unlike the hill-climber, you realise the nearer you approach the summit the easier and more attractive the climb becomes. And when you reach the summit a new world lies at your feet.

Instructions

the actual value of *er* more than would in English (and so). The sound, or rather lack of sound, is easily recognised when hearing a Malay pronounce a Malay word such as *perang* as it would almost seem to be 'prang' to the listener. The letter *e*, as a very short sound (pepet), can generally be recognised when it occurs in closed syllables as above (e.g. *perang*), where it is the next to last syllable. The *e* in the last syllable is almost invariably a long sound e.g. *leleh* where the first *e* is very short and the second long and the word is pronounced *leey*.

The sounds of Malay, together with the alphabet, have been recorded and you will find the text of this section (*Daftar perbendaharaan*) in your main textbook. Instructions as to how to use the sounds section are given in the separate Students' Instructions book.

For students who have had some knowledge of the old Romanised form of Malay, the new spelling system may appear strange at first. They will find that the sound of the letter *ch* (as in the English word *chance*) and as which it pronounced as (as in the English word *chance*)

Introduction

How to make the MOST of the Linguaphone Course

You have now in your hands one of the finest means yet devised for the teaching of Modern Languages. Many years of experimental work with every known method of language teaching have gone into the preparation of this Linguaphone Course.

You can now command the services of some of the finest language teachers in the world—men and women who combine all the essential elements of the ideal teacher; the language they are waiting to teach you is their own language, as familiar to them as your own language is to you.

They are acknowledged experts in their language, understanding every aspect of it, widely read and widely versed in the culture of their own nation. And, most important perhaps of all, they are expert teachers, with the skill born of long experience in imparting their knowledge to others, and in understanding and smoothing out all the difficulties that might impede your progress.

You are waiting to learn—they are waiting to teach. These Instructions have only one purpose: to introduce you to each other, and to help you over the early stages of your acquaintance. You may think that you do not need to be told how to listen. But *when* to listen and when to speak, what to listen for, and how to absorb all that there is to listen to—on all these points these Instructions will guide you.

They will show you at every point of your developing knowledge how your ear, eye, lips and memory can best and most effectively co-operate—as they did automatically when you learned as a child to speak your own language—so as to enable you to master every sound and every idiom of the foreign languages you have chosen.

If you follow these Instructions carefully, even though at the moment you may not see the value of them, you will find that at every step of your progress, as on a path that climbs from a valley to the shoulder of a hill, you are offered an even wider and more fascinating prospect, but, unlike the hill-climber, you will find that the nearer you approach the summit the easier and more attractive the climb becomes. And when you reach the summit a new world lies at your feet.

Preliminary Advice

These Instructions are applicable both to those students who already have some knowledge of the foreign language, and to those who have no knowledge of it at all.

The object of these Instructions is to help you learn, not only how to speak the language, but also how to read, write and understand it.

If you already have a certain knowledge or a smattering of the spoken language, your accent may not be perfect. We therefore advise you to try and forget as far as possible what you have learned before, following the Instructions even more carefully than if you were a beginner.

If you have no previous knowledge and follow these Instructions conscientiously, you must inevitably speak the foreign language with the same accent and intonation as the speakers whose voices you have been listening to.

The first few Lessons are spoken slowly and deliberately, so as to enable you to catch every word. The more your ear gets accustomed to the foreign language, the clearer and more distinct the foreign words become to you, and what at first may have seemed to you a jumble of strange and incomprehensible sounds gradually assumes the shape of distinct and intelligible speech.

The rate of speech advances with every Lesson as the course progresses, until in the later Lessons it reaches the normal rate. By then, you will have no difficulty in following the text, because in the meantime your ear will have become thoroughly trained and attuned to the foreign language.

At the outset you may find the different turns of speech and idioms strange, but just take these peculiarities (present in *every* language—including English!) for granted at first. Later on, when you have the feel of the language, they will all become perfectly clear to you, and you will be able to express your thoughts in this new medium just as spontaneously as you do in English.

Try not to let a single day pass without doing some study.

It is better to do a little at a time at regular intervals than a great deal at long intervals.

Important

Do not attempt to pronounce the sentences aloud until instructed to do so.

Summary of Instructions

We give below a résumé of the detailed instructions which follow on pages 18–21.

Listening

- (a) Listen, following text in book.
- (b) Listen, without looking at the book.
- (c) Listen, following with the book.

Understanding

Make out the meaning with the help of pictures and Vocabulary.

Check by using the translation and the explanatory notes.

Ear-training

Listen, first following with the text and then only looking at the picture.

Speaking and Reading

Read the text aloud *with* the speaker. Then read it aloud by yourself.

Conversation

Listen to the question. Look at the text and simultaneously *with* the speaker give the answer.

Written Exercises

Do the written exercises and check your answers in the key at the back of the book.

Instructions

Whether you study a whole Lesson at a time, or only a portion of it, *all* the following Instructions Nos. 1 to 11 should be carried out for each Lesson or each portion of the Lesson. The same plan should be followed whether your Course is on records, tape or cassette.

1 Ear-training

(Do not try at this stage to understand the meaning of the text. Your aim should be to distinguish each syllable and each word and to identify the spoken word with the printed text.)

- (a) Listen, and at the same time, follow the words in the illustrated Textbook.
- (b) Listen again without looking at the Textbook.
- (c) Listen once more, this time following the words in the Textbook.

Repeat the above several times.

2 Understanding

Read through the text you are studying and refer to the pictures. They will help to make the meaning of the sentences clear to you and to fix the words in your mind. Wherever a number is attached to a word in the text, refer to the large picture illustrating the Lesson; there you will see the same number attached to the object which the word represents. If there are small pictures as well, the words they illustrate will be indicated by a letter in italics.

Having done this, make quite sure you understand the text by consulting the Vocabulary. To check that you really understand the meaning of the text refer to the translation provided. Do this a sentence at a time, reading first the Malay sentence then the translation of it.

3 Ear-training in conjunction with Text and Pictures

Play the portion you are studying several times, first following the text in the book; then concentrate on the pictures and look at the various objects as they are mentioned. By now you should have quite a good idea of the meaning of the sentences as you hear them.

4 Ear-training combined with Spelling

Listen again, while following the text in the book, this time paying special attention to the spelling of the words.

5 Writing

Copy out the text.

6 Detailed Ear-training

Listen to the text while following it in the book. Do you understand every word? If not, underline in pencil the words you do not understand.

Look up the meaning of the words underlined and then listen several times without the book, until you are able to understand everything.

7 Speaking

If you are to be understood easily, you must speak the language in the same way as the speakers on the record. This means imitating their intonation as well as pronunciation, so do not be afraid to copy the rise and fall of the voice exactly, speaking in a *loud, clear* voice.

Practice as follows: Listen to the recording and read aloud from the Textbook *with* the speaker. (You may not be able to keep up with him at first, but this will come with more listening practice.) Repeat several times until you are quite certain of your pronunciation and can keep up with the speaker.

8 Reading

Listen to the text, at the same time following in the book. Then listen to it without looking at the book. Finally, read it aloud several times. Read slowly at first. Fluency will come of its own accord. Reading aloud is an excellent exercise for acquiring fluency in speaking, but should only be practised when you are sure of your pronunciation.

9 Ear Test

Without looking at the book, listen to the text to satisfy yourself that you understand every word you hear.

10 Spontaneous Conversion of Images into Spoken Words

Look at the large picture. Take, one by one, each person and object numbered and, besides giving its name, give a description of it and express the whole idea represented. Always say the words aloud.

A similar exercise can be practised whenever there are small pictures in the text.

11 Detailed Understanding of the Text

Copy out from the Vocabulary the meanings of the words and phrases in your own language. Close the Vocabulary and add the foreign equivalents. Check from the Vocabulary.

Make quite sure you understand the grammatical construction of the sentences. Do this by referring to the explanatory notes in this handbook.

12 Final Test

Having carried out *all* the above Instructions for the *whole* of a Lesson, do this final test.

Listen to the whole Lesson without the book. Can you understand and follow it all? Do you know it so well that you do not need to think of the English meaning of it? If so, you are beginning to think in the foreign language and have really mastered the Lesson. Play the Lesson again, this time reading it aloud together with the speaker to make quite sure your pronunciation and intonation are correct.

13 Written Exercises (Latihan-Latihan)

Your written exercises section contains three exercises on each lesson. You should attempt these exercises only when you are sure you thoroughly understand the lesson you have just completed. Write your answers to each exercise on a separate piece of paper, having first studied the examples which show you what you have to do. Then check your answers with those given in the key at the back of the book.

Where the text consists of conversation in the form of questions and answers, the following additional Instructions should be carried out:

14 Answering the Questions heard on the Recording

Start playing the Lesson. Look at the text and listen to the first question, then simultaneously *with* the speaker say aloud the answer. Do this several times with each question in turn until you feel you can answer the questions from memory without looking at the text.

15 Asking Questions and Hearing the Answers

Look at the text and ask the question *with* the speaker and then just listen to the answer. Do this several times until you can say it from memory without looking at the text.

Independent Self-Expression

After you have mastered the first two or three Lessons, you will have acquired quite a considerable vocabulary.

The material thus learned will not only enable you to formulate such sentences as appear in the book, but you will find by degrees that with the words and expressions you have acquired you will also be able to formulate correctly your own independent sentences and phrases as occasion arises. The more Lessons you master, the easier you will find the art of self-expression in the foreign language.

The material is there, the means of acquiring it are there; it is for you to make it your own by a little perseverance and a little work.

The Sounds

The text of the individual words recorded to illustrate the sounds of the language will be found in the main Textbook. This recording is useful for reference purposes. Listening to the examples of only one or two sounds at a time will sharpen your ear and be an invaluable help in acquiring a good pronunciation.

Regarding Pronunciation Generally

Too much stress cannot be laid on correct pronunciation. You may feel sure that you can repeat the first Lesson correctly, but if you go back to Lesson 1, after you have finished Lessons 2 and 3, your ear will have become sharper in picking up nuances of tone, and you will find many little points to correct. Keep on referring, therefore, to Lesson 1 at intervals as a pronunciation test—you can always learn from Lesson 1 in this respect.

Final Note

When you have completed this Course, you will, if you have followed the Instructions carefully, have acquired a lasting knowledge of the language you have chosen. You can now make yourself easily understood when you speak it; your accent is good and you have a sufficient vocabulary for all the ordinary needs of daily life. Moreover, you will have no difficulty in understanding the language when others speak it, and can converse fluently with natives and enjoy the broadcasts from foreign stations. Most thrilling of all, perhaps, you are well-fitted to set out on a voyage of exploration in the literature of the language you have mastered. (When you do so, make a habit of reading aloud a short passage for half an hour or so. If there are any words in the passage you do not understand, do not look them up in the dictionary at once. Read the passage aloud several times, then look up the meaning of the unknown words, and finally read the whole passage four or five times more.)

Even after you have completed the Course, it is a good idea to listen occasionally to one or other of the Lessons in order to keep your ear attuned to the language and to maintain the purity of your accent. The Course is particularly valuable for enabling the student to maintain his knowledge of the language at a high level at all times, especially in the important matter of the intonation to be used in conversation on everyday topics.

In acquiring the language that you have already mastered you have prepared the ground for a great harvest of real and lasting enjoyment, which you are now ready to reap. But you have done more. You have prepared and trained yourself so that when next you set out into new fields of language-study, your labour will be the lighter, and even more abundant and satisfying the reward.

The choice of the next language you study will depend on your own requirements. Each language has its own advantages.

Having completed one language, you may now care to study two or more languages simultaneously. By the Linguaphone method it is possible to do this with an expenditure of very little more time and effort than is needed to learn a single language. Moreover, it is fascinating to compare the forms of expression given to the same idea in different languages. This added interest, again, enables rapid progress to be made without strain and almost without conscious effort, because a task which gives pleasure in itself is always easier of accomplishment—in fact, it ceases to be a task and becomes a pastime.

Introduction Let's Speak Bahasa Malaysia Part I

Good morning, Sir.

Later, please.

I'm a teacher.

You're a student.

I'm a Malay.

You're not a Malay.

The Malays speak Bahasa Malaysia.

I'm now speaking Bahasa Malaysia.

This is a table.

This is a gramophone.

This is a record.

The record is on the gramophone.

The gramophone is on the table.

You're holding a book in your hand.

It's open.

You're looking at it.

You're listening to it.

You're listening to it.

You're learning to speak, read and write in Bahasa Malaysia.

When I speak slowly, surely you can understand me.

When I speak fast, you can't.

Pendahuluan

Mari kita bercakap Bahasa Malaysia.

Bahagian satu

pendahuluan introduction

mari kita let us

bercakap to speak, to talk

addressed

mari kita let us

bercakap to speak, to talk

Bahasa language

Malayu Malay a member of the

Malay race

Bahasa Malayu the Malay Language

is the language spoken by the

native Malays. When Malaya was
reconstituted as Malaysia, the
language became known as Bahasa
Malaysia.

Bahasa Malaysia the official
language of Malaysia (formerly
known as Bahasa Malaya)

bahagian part, section, division

satu one

selamat afternoon

pagi morning

selamat pagi good morning

Final Note

When you have completed this Course, you will, if you have followed the instructions carefully, have acquired a lasting knowledge of the language you have chosen. You can now make yourself easily understood when you speak it; your accent is good and you have a sufficient vocabulary for all the ordinary needs of daily life. Moreover, you will have no difficulty in understanding the language when others speak it, and can converse fluently with natives and enjoy the broadest form of foreign relations. Most thrilling of all, perhaps, you are well-fitted to set out on a voyage of exploration in the literature of the language you have mastered. (When you have made a habit of reading a short passage for half an hour every day, you will find that the passage you do not understand at first will become clear to you as you read it a second time, and then a third, and so on. Read the passage about seven times, then look up the meaning of the unknown words, and finally read the whole passage four or five times more.)

Even after you have done this, it is a good idea to listen occasionally to one of the Lessons in order to keep your ear attuned to the purity of your accent, and to enable the student to maintain his knowledge of the language at a high level at all times, especially in the important matter of the intonation to be used in conversation on everyday topics.

In acquiring the language you have chosen, you have prepared the ground for a rich and lasting enjoyment of the language which you are now ready to reap. But you have done more. You have prepared yourself for the study of other languages. The study of a new language will be the easier, and even more abundant and satisfying the reward. The choice of the next language you study will depend on your own requirements. Each language has its own advantages. Having completed one language, you may now care to study two or more languages simultaneously. By the Linguaphone method it is possible to do this with an expenditure of very little more time and effort than is needed to learn a single language. Moreover, it is fascinating to compare the forms of expression given to the same idea in different languages. This added interest, again, enables rapid progress to be made without strain and almost without conscious effort, because a task which gives pleasure in itself is always easier of accomplishment—in fact, it ceases to be a task and becomes a pastime.

Introduction Let's Speak Bahasa Malaysia Part I

Good morning, sir.

Listen, please.

I'm a teacher.

You're a student.

I'm a Malay.

You're not a Malay.

The Malays speak Bahasa Malaysia.

I'm now speaking Bahasa Malaysia.

This is a table.

This is a gramophone.

This is a record.

The record is on the gramophone.

The gramophone is on the table.

You're holding a book in your hand.

It's open.

You're looking at the book.

You're listening to the record.

You're listening to my voice.

You're learning to speak, read and write in Bahasa Malaysia.

When I speak slowly, surely you can understand me.

When I speak fast, you can't.

Pendahuluan

Mari kita bercakap Bahasa Malaysia

Bahagian satu

pendahuluan introduction

mari come

kita we, us (including the person addressed)

mari kita let us

cakap speak, talk

bercakap to speak, to talk

bahasa language

Melayu Malay; a member of the Malay race

Bahasa Melayu the Malay Language, i.e. the language spoken by the

native Malays. When Malaya was reconstituted as Malaysia the language became known as **Bahasa Malaysia**.

Bahasa Malaysia the official language of Malaysia (formerly known as **Bahasa Melayu**)

bahagian part, section, division

satu one

selamat safe

pagi morning

selamat pagi good morning

tuan Mr., sir (a polite form of address)
sila please
dengar listen
mendengar listening (active)
saya I, me
orang person, human being, people
seorang one person
guru teacher
pelajar student
bukan not (implying an alternative)
sekarang now
ini this
buah numeral coefficient for round object, fruit
sebuah a, one (of round object)
meja table
peti box
nyanyi sing
petinyanyi gramophone (lit. singing box)
piring saucer, disc
hitam black
piringhitam a gramophone record
ada is, are, to exist
atas on, above, over
di atas on top of, on, over, above
pegang hold

memegang holding, holds
buku book
di in, at, on (prefix) (preposition of place)
tangan hand
buka to open
terbuka open (state of being open)
sedang adverb used to indicate present continuous tense
lihat look, see, view
melihat looking, seeing, viewing
itu that
suara voice
belajar to learn, to study
baca read
membaca reading
tulis write
menulis writing
juga also
bila when
perlahan slow
perlahan-lahan slowly
tentu sure, surely
boleh can, able, may
faham understand
cepat fast, quick
cepat-cepat quickly
tidak no

Introduction Let's Speak Bahasa Malaysia Part II

Good afternoon. How are you?
 Very well, thank you.
 Now, please answer my questions.
 Am I a teacher?
 Yes, you are a teacher.
 Are you a student?
 Yes, I am.
 Are you a Malay?
 No, I'm not.
 Who is the teacher, you or me?
 You are the teacher.
 And who's the student?

I'm the student.
 Am I now speaking Bahasa Malaysia?
 Yes, you're now speaking Bahasa Malaysia.
 Can you speak Bahasa Malaysia?
 Yes, I can, a little.
 What's this.
 That's a record.
 Where's the record?
 It's on the gramophone.
 Is this a book?
 Yes, it is.
 Is this a book?
 No, it isn't; it's a record.
 Where are you sitting?
 I'm sitting in a chair.
 What are you listening to?
 I'm listening to the voice on the record.
 Whose voice are you listening to?
 I'm listening to your voice.
 What are you looking at?
 I'm looking at the book.
 Is the book open or closed?
 It's open.
 When I speak slowly can you understand me?
 Yes, I can.
 When I speak fast can you understand me?
 No, I can't.

Bahagian dua

dua two
tengah middle
hari day
selamat tengah hari good afternoon
apa what
khabar news, tidings
apa khabar? how are you?
baik good
khabar baik very well
terima accept, receive
kasih love, affection

terima kasih thank you
jawab answer
pertanyaan question
kah interrogative particle used for expressing question
adakah is there, are there
ya yes, an expression of agreement
siapa, siapakah who
atau or
dan and
sedikit a little

lah a particle which can be affixed to a word in a sentence to give emphasis
mana where
di mana where (indicating place)
duduk sit

kerusi chair
tutup close
tertutup closed. The prefix **ter** indicates a state of completion
yang which, who, that
yang mana which one

Lesson 1 My Family

This is my family: my wife, my son, my daughter and I, Muhammad. My wife's name is Asmah. I'm her husband. I'm a man and my wife is a woman. We've got two children, a boy and a girl. My son's name is Ahmad. He's twelve years old. My daughter's name is Fatimah. She's still small. She's only eight years old. Fatimah is four years younger than Ahmad, and Ahmad is four years older than Fatimah. In my family Fatimah is the youngest, and I'm the oldest. Ahmad is Fatimah's elder brother, and Fatimah is Ahmad's younger sister. Ahmad is my son. I'm his father and my wife is his mother. Ahmad and Fatimah are our children. We love them very much. My wife is sitting in an arm-chair reading a book. I'm standing near the window smoking a pipe. Fatimah is writing a letter. Ahmad is kneeling on the floor playing with his toy train set. A cat is sitting underneath the table.

Pelajaran satu (1) Keluarga saya

pelajaran lesson
pertama first
keluarga family
keluarga saya my family
isteri wife
nama name
nya his, hers, its, theirs (an affix indicating possession)
anak son of, daughter of, child, children
lelaki, laki-laki male, man
perempuan female, woman
anak lelaki saya my son
anak perempuan saya my daughter

suami husband
kami we, our (excluding the person addressed)
umur age
duabelas twelve
tahun year
dia she, he
masih still
kecil small, young
baru only, just, new, recent
lapan eight
empat four
lebih more, excess
muda young, not ripe

lebih muda younger
daripada than, from
tua old
lebih tua older
dalam in, inside, deep
termuda youngest (prefix **ter** indicates superlative degree)
tertua oldest (prefix **ter** indicates superlative degree)
sekali an adverb of superlative degree, once
ialah is, are (for emphasis)
abang elder brother
adik younger brother or sister
bapa father
bapanya his/her father
ibu mother
ibunya his/her mother
ibu-bapa parents
sangat very, extremely
pada to, with
mereka them
kerusi sandar armchair

diri self
berdiri standing (by oneself)
dekat near
tingkap window
sambil while
hisap smoke
menghisap smoking, sucking
paip pipe
sedang menulis is writing
surat letter
lutut knee
berlutut kneeling
lantai floor
main play
bermain playing
dengan with
keretapi train
keretapi mainan toy train
ekor tail
kucing cat
bawah under
di bawah underneath

Lesson 2 Questions and Answers

Who am I?
 You're Encik Muhammad.
 Whose husband am I?
 You're Puan Asmah's husband.
 What's my son's name?
 His name's Ahmad.
 What's your name?
 My name's Karim.
 Have I got one or two children?
 You've got two children.
 Is Fatimah my daughter?
 Yes, she is.
 How old is she?
 She's eight years old.
 What's she doing?
 She's writing a letter.
 Is she standing or sitting?

She's sitting.
 What's Ahmad playing with?
 He's playing with his toy train set.
 Has Ahmad got any brothers?
 No, he hasn't.
 Have you got any brothers?
 Yes, I have.
 How many?
 Only one.
 Who's smoking the pipe?
 You are.
 Do you smoke cigarettes?
 No, I don't.
 Does your father smoke?
 Yes, he does.
 Are there women who smoke cigarettes?
 Yes, there are some who do while others don't.

Pelajaran dua (2)

Soalan dan jawapan

soalan question
 jawapan answer
 anda you (newly-coined word)
 Encik Mr.
 Puan you, Mrs. (polite form of address)
 berapa how much, how many
 buat do, make
 dibuatnya is doing (by)

umurnya his/her age
 punya possess
 mempunyai possess, own
 adik-beradik brothers and sisters
 sahaja only
 rokok cigarettes
 kah an affix indicating question
 merokok to smoke
 mengajar to teach

Lesson 3 Our House

In Malaysia, quite a number of people live in flats, but most people live in low houses in the suburbs. We, too, have a house in the suburbs. We bought it about fifteen years ago when we got married. Most houses in the suburbs have two floors, the ground floor and the first floor. On the ground floor are the dining room, the hall, the sitting room, and also the kitchen. In one corner of the hall we can see a coat hanger, a hat and an umbrella. From the

hall there is a staircase leading to the first floor. On this floor there are four bedrooms, a bathroom and a toilet. In front of our house there is a small garden. In this garden we plant flowers like roses, orchids and other types of flowers. At the back of the house there is a slightly bigger garden and a vacant (plot of) land. Here, there are a number of fruit trees like guava, rambutans and mangosteen trees. There is also a vegetable plot where we plant vegetables like chillies, cucumber, sweet potatoes and aubergines. There is a garage by the side of the house. The garden is fenced and there is a gate.

Pelajaran tiga (3)

Rumah kami

tiga three
 rumah house
 rumah pangsa flat
 ramai many, plenty (of people)
 tinggal live
 tetapi but
 kebanyakan most
 banyak much, many
 kebanyakannya mostly
 rendah low
 kawasan area
 bandar city
 luar outside
 kawasan luarbandar suburbs,
 rural areas
 beli buy
 lebih more
 kurang less
 lebih kurang about, approximately
 iaitu that is
 lima five
 limabelas fifteen
 belas the tenth unit
 dulu, dahulu ago, before,
 previously, first
 apabila when
 kahwin to marry
 berkahwin married
 tingkat storeys, floors (of buildings)
 tingkat bawah ground floor
 tingkat atas top floor, upstairs

bilik room
 makan eat
 bilik makan dining room
 dewan hall
 tetamu guests
 bilik tetamu sitting-room
 dapur kitchen
 sudut corner
 nampak see
 penyangkut hanger
 baju dress, shirt generally
 penyangkut baju coat hanger
 topi hat
 payung umbrella
 sekaki an adjective used to describe
 an object with a leg-like shape
 kaki foot
 tangga ladder, steps
 anak tangga staircase
 tuju heads for, points at
 menuju leading to, pointing at
 tidur sleep
 bilik tidur bedroom
 mandi bathing
 bilik mandi bathroom
 tandas toilet
 hadapan front
 di hadapan in front of
 taman garden
 tanam to plant
 menanam planting

pokok plant, tree
bunga flower
seperti such as, like
ros rose
anggerik orchids
lain-lain others
jenis types, kinds, species
belakang back
di belakang at the back of
pula likewise, also
besar big
tanah land, earth
lapang empty, vacant
sana, di sana there
beberapa a number of
batang stem (of trees, flowers etc)
buah fruit
pokok buah-buahan fruit trees
jambu guava
rambutan rambutans

manggis mangosteen
kebun plantation, garden
sayur vegetable
kebun sayur vegetable garden
lada chillies
timun cucumber
keledek sweet potatoes
terung aubergine
tepi edge, margin, border, by the side of
tempat place
simpan keep
menyimpan keeping
motokar car
tempat menyimpan motokar garage
pagar fence
berpagar fenced
pintu door, gate
pintu pagar the gate itself

Lesson 4 Conversation about our House

Now let's talk about our house. Can you tell me where we live?

Yes, I can. You live in a house in the suburbs.

Correct. Now, tell me, is the house big or small?

The house is neither too big nor too small.

When did I buy the house?

You bought it about fifteen years ago.

Is there a garage?

Yes, there is.

How many rooms are there in the house?

Wait a moment. Let me count first . . . one, two, three, four, five, six, seven.

Altogether there are seven rooms, including the kitchen.

Is the bedroom upstairs or downstairs?

Upstairs, on the top floor.

What rooms are there downstairs, on the ground floor?

The dining room, the sitting room and the kitchen.

Has our house got a garden?

Yes, it has.

Where are the flowers planted?

In front of the house.

Are there fruit trees in front of the house?

No, there aren't, but there are fruit trees in the garden at the back of the house.

Have we got many fruit trees?

No, not many; only a few.

Do you like eating fruit?

Yes, I like eating fruit such as apples, durians, rambutans and mangosteens.

Pelajaran empat (4)

Perbualan tentang rumah kami

perbualan conversation, chat, dialogue

berbual having a chat, having a conversation, having a talk

tentang about, concerning

rumah house

sekarang now

beri to give

beritahu to inform, to tell

tinggal stay, live

kawasan area

luarbandar rural, countryside (*lit.* outside the town), suburbs

betul true, correct, right

terlalu very, exceedingly

besar big, huge, large

kecil small

pula also, likewise, too

beli buy, purchase

membeli buying, purchasing (suffix *nya* refers to the object *house*)

lebih more, over

kurang less

lebih kurang about, approximately, more or less

tempat place

simpan keep, store away

motokar car

tempat simpan motokar garage

bilik room

di dalam inside, in, within

nanti wait

biar to allow, to permit, let

biar saya let me

kira count, calculate

tiga three

enam six

tujuh, tujuh seven

kesemuanya altogether

termasuk including

dapur kitchen

bilik dapur kitchen (*lit.* kitchen room)

tidur sleep

bilik tidur bedroom (*lit.* room for sleeping in)

tingkat storey of house, floor

tingkat atas upstairs

tingkat bawah downstairs

bahagian section, part of

makan eat

bilik makan dining room

tetamu, tamu-tamu guests

bilik tetamu guest room, sitting room

taman garden

pokok plant

bunga flower

tanam to plant

menanam planting

ditanam planted with
 hadapan in front, opposite, ahead
 situ, sana there
 di situ, di sana there (*lit.* at there)
 buah-buahan fruits
 tetapi, tapi but
 belakang back, behind
 banyak plenty, many, a lot
 banyakkah are there plenty, are
 there many etc

hanya merely, just
 sahaja, saja only
 suka like, appreciate
 epal apple
 durian durian
 rambutan rambutans
 manggis mangosteen
 kerusi-meja furniture

Lesson 5 Our Sitting Room

Look at our sitting room in this picture. As you enter it you can see a book-shelf placed near the wall. On the left there is a large window and underneath it there is a bench, but you can't see it because it is placed behind the settee. On the settee there are two cushions. A television set is placed near the wall on the right, and beside it there is an arm-chair. An old woman is seen sitting in this chair, but nobody is sitting on the other chairs. On the television set there is an alarm clock, and there is a painting hanging on the wall. On its right there is a lamp stand. Opposite the television set there is a small table. On it there is an ash tray and some newspapers. The floor is covered with a beautiful and expensive carpet. An electric light hangs from the middle of the ceiling. At night we switch the light on and draw the curtain. During the day the sun shines through the window.

Pelajaran lima (5) Bilik tetamu kami

cuba try
 gambar picture, photo
 apabila, bila when
 masuk enter, come in
 dapat get, obtain
 para-para shelf
 para-para buku book-shelf
 letak to place, to locate, to put on
 terletak placed, located, situated
 hampir near
 berhampiran nearby
 dinding wall

sebelah besides, at the side of
 kiri left
 sebelah kiri on the left
 bangku bench
 kerana because
 kerusi panjang settee
 biji (a numeral coefficient)
 bantal pillow
 sandar to lean against
 bantal sandar cushions
 peti talvisyen television set
 tepi edge, near, on the verge of

kanan right
 kelihatan seen
 sedang duduk sitting
 lain other
 jam watch, clock
 jam gerak alarm clock
 gantung hang
 tergantung hanging, hangs
 lukisan painting
 lampu lamp
 lampu berkaki lamp stand
 berhadapan dengan opposite, facing,
 in front of
 habuk ash, dust
 rokok cigarettes
 tempat habuk rokok ash tray
 beberapa a number of, some, a few
 naskhah copies, original manuscript
 suratkhavar newspaper
 bentang to spread over, laid on
 dibentangkan are spread
 sehelai a piece of
 tikar mat (made of mengkuang or
 pandan leaves)

permaidani carpet
 cantik beautiful, pretty
 mahal expensive, dear, costly
 lampu letrik electric lights/lamps
 siling ceiling
 waktu time
 malam night
 di waktu malam at night, during the
 night
 nyala alight, as on fire
 nyalakan to light, to switch on
 tutup close
 kain cloth
 langsir curtain
 tutup langsir draw the curtain
 siang daylight
 cahaya light, beam, gleam
 matahari sun
 cahaya matahari sunlight
 menerusi through
 tingkap window
 menerusi tingkap through the win-
 dow

Lesson 6 Conversation between Teacher and Student

Is there a book-shelf in our sitting room?

Yes, there is.

Are there many books in it?

Yes, there are.

How many books are there on the shelf?

I don't know, because I haven't counted them.

Where's the window?

It's on the left.

What is that thing under the window?

That's a bench.

Can you see the bench?

No, I can't.

Why not?

Because it's hidden behind the settee.

Is there anything (placed) on the radiogram?

No, there isn't.

Isn't there something on the small table?
 Yes, there are an ash tray and some newspapers.
 Is there an arm-chair in that room?
 Yes, there is.

Can you see there's a person sitting in that chair?
 Yes, I can. The person's an old lady.

Is there anyone sitting in the other chairs?

No, there's nobody sitting on that settee.

Do you like our sitting room?

Yes, I like it very much.

I'm so happy. Everyone likes our room.

Pelajaran enam (6)

Perbualan antara guru dan pelajar

antara between
 tahu know
 mengira counting
 benda thing, object
 mengapa why?
 terlindung hidden
 suatu one
 suatu benda something
 apa-apa benda anything
 sesiapa anyone, anybody

pun also
 sangat very, extremely
 suka happy, like
 sangat suka very happy, like very much
 sukakan like, appreciate
 begitu in that way, thus
 gembira happy, glad
 begitu gembira so happy
 semua everyone, all

Lesson 7 Comparison

Now let's compare our sitting room with that of Encik Lim. Encik Lim and his wife, Puan Lim, are our close friends. They live next door to us. Our room is slightly bigger than their room and contains more furniture. As you can see in Encik Lim's room there isn't a radio. My book-shelf is in my sitting room whereas his book-shelf is in his study. Encik Lim is interested in paintings. Most of his paintings are the works of well-known local artists. Although his room is smaller than mine, it is tidier and neater. Encik Lim's wife is very good at interior decoration. She is good and well-known in our area for her ability. In Encik Lim's sitting room there are no lamp stands, benches, tables or small chairs, but there is a piano, there are three arm-chairs and a settee with three cushions neatly placed on it. On the television

set is (placed) a vase of flowers. On the wall hangs a beautiful oil painting and a big expensive batik painting. Like our room, Encik Lim's room, too, has large windows. During the day the sun shines through the windows brightening up the room.

Pelajaran tujuh (7)

Perbandingan

perbandingan comparison
 bandingkan compare
 isterinya his wife
 sahabat friend
 karib close, good, dear
 sahabat karib close friend
 sebelah next to, one side
 perabut furniture
 sebagaimana as, like
 radio radio
 bilik belajarnya his study
 peminat fans, admirers, a person who is interested in something
 senilukis the art of drawing
 pelukis-pelukis artists, painters
 hasil produce, product, result of
 karya works of
 tempatan local
 hasil karya pelukis-pelukis tempatan works of local artists
 terkenal well known

sungguhpun although
 kemas neat, tidy
 teratur well arranged, in order
 pandai clever, good at something, intelligent
 hias to decorate
 menghias decorating
 daerah district, area around oneself
 kebolehannya his ability
 serta as well as
 jambangan a bouquet
 jambangan bunga a vase of flowers
 cat paint
 minyak oil
 lukisan cat minyak oil painting
 batik printed cloth, batik
 harga price, cost
 harganya its price, its cost
 di waktu during
 menerangi brightening, lighting

Lesson 8 Another Dialogue

You've learned about our sitting room and that of Encik Lim. I'd now like to put a few questions to you about our sitting room. Please tell me whose sitting room you prefer, Encik Lim's or ours?

I don't think there's much difference between the two rooms, but on the whole I choose your room.

I'm very pleased to hear it. Encik Lim's furniture is certainly more modern than ours. Surely you know that they've just got married; they've just bought their furniture. We have been married fifteen years; our furniture is

not as modern as Encik Lim's. Have you seen the beautiful paintings hanging in Encik Lim's room?

Yes, I saw there were an oil painting and a batik painting. I was greatly impressed by those paintings. I think they must be very expensive.

What do you think of pianos?

I think a piano is a very good musical instrument.

Can you play the piano?

I'm afraid I can't.

What about your wife?

She plays the violin very well.

Pelajaran lapan (8)

Satu lagi perbualan

lagi more, yet another
telah already, had
mengetahui know
berkenaan concerning, about
ingin like, wish, wanting (*lit.* long-ing for)
mengemukakan put across, put forward
harap please, hope
harap beritahu saya please let me know
ataupun or
fikir think
perbezaan difference
pada at, on
pada keseluruhannya on the whole
pilih choose
sungguh really, truly
memang certainly, no doubt, of course

moden modern
rumah house
tangga stairs, steps
berumah-tangga to be married
selama for as long as
semoden as modern as
tertarik pulled, interested in
hati heart
sungguh tertarik hati greatly im-pressed by
percaya believe
bagaimana how, what
pendapat opinion, views
berpendapat having the opinion
sejenis a kind of
alat instrument
bunyi-bunyian musical
maaf sorry, please forgive
biola violin

Lesson 9 My Guests

Today is Saturday. There is a knock on the door. Our neighbours, Encik and Puan Muthu are coming to visit us. Our servant opens the door and invites them in. Having shut the door, she invites Encik and Puan Muthu

into the sitting room. We welcome them, shake hands with them and invite them to sit down. A few minutes later we hear the door-bell. This time, it is Norah, my wife's niece, who has just arrived from the country. She is going to stay with us till the end of the week. She takes (hold of) my hand and kisses it and does the same with my wife. My wife introduces Norah to Encik and Puan Muthu. Then we sit down. The ladies talk about household matters and the latest fashions in clothes. We, men, talk about politics and the latest news. Our servant comes in with a tray with five cups and a teapot on it. And another tray contains cakes, a plate of kuih lapis, a plate of kuih keria and a plate of kuih bingka. There is also a finger bowl. My wife passes the cups round and invites them to have tea. We have tea and cakes and go on with our conversations.

Pelajaran sembilan (9)

Tetamu saya

sembilan nine
hari Sabtu Saturday
bunyi sound, noise
berbunyi having a sound, sounded
ketuk knock
diketuk knock at/on
jiran neighbour
datang come, arrive
gaji wage, salary
orang gaji servant
buka to open
membuka opens
mempersilakan to invite
mereka they
setelah after
ditutupnya is shut by
mengalu-alukan welcome
berjabat to grasp
tangan hands
berjabat tangan shake hands
sambil while
minit minutes
kemudian afterwards, later on
loceng bell
kali ini this time
saudara relative, relation
anak saudara nephew, niece
tiba arrive, reach

kampung village
akan will, shall
bersama-sama together with
hingga till
hujung end
minggu week
salam greetings
bersalam shake hands
cium kiss
mencium kisses
memperkenalkan introduces
kepada to
selepas after
cerita story
bercerita talk about
rumah-tangga household
fesyen fashion
pakaian dress, clothes
terbaru latest, most recent
berbual-bual talk about, chat
politik politics
berita-berita news
bawa to carry
membawa carries
dulang tray
berisi containing
cawan cup
tekoh pot, teapot

air	water	mangkuk	bowl
air teh	tea (drink)	cuci	to wash
kuih-kuih	cakes	mengedarkan	pass around, circulate
piring	plate saucer	larise	
kuih lapis	names of different types of Malay cakes	teh	tea
kuih keria		minum	drink
kuih bingka			

Lesson 10 A Visit

Good afternoon Encik Muthu and Puan Muthu. How are you?

Very well, thank you, and you?

Very well, thank you. Please sit down. . . . Oh, excuse me, that's probably my niece knocking on the door. Oh, Norita. I'm very pleased to see you.

You look fit. I don't think you have ever met Norita. Let me introduce her.

This is my niece, Norita. These are my friends, Encik and Puan Muthu.

How are you, Norita?

Now come and join us for tea. Encik and Puan Muthu, would you like tea or coffee?

We are not choosy, but actually we prefer tea.

Good, we like tea, too. How's (your) business, Encik Muthu?

It seems to be progressing quite well, thank you. And how about your own business?

I'm afraid it's not doing too well. I fear it may get worse. In fact this is the worst year for me.

I'm sorry to hear that. I hope the situation will improve soon.

Oh yes, how is your nephew, Zulkifli?

Oh he's well, thank you. At the moment he's staying with his uncle, Encik Salim and his cousin, Encik Osman, in the country.

How long is he going to stay there?

I'm not very sure, but he's happy staying there. So, the longer he stays there, the better it is for him.

Pelajaran sepuluh (10)

Suatu lawatan

sepuluh	ten	petang	afternoon, evening
suatu	a, one	selamat petang	good afternoon/evening
lawatan	visit	barangkali	perhaps, may be, probably

mengetuk	knocks, knocking	maju	progresses
jumpa	to meet	sendiri	own, self
berjumpa	meeting, meet	dukacita	I'm afraid, regret, sorry
kamu	you	khuatir	fear, apprehensive
sihat	well, healthy, fit	bertambah	increase in number, size
sekalian	all	buruk	bad, worse
pernah	ever	bertambah buruk	get worse
kenalkan	introduces	paling	extremely (superlative)
jemput	to call upon	bagi	for
jemputlah bersama-sama	please come and join us	keadaannya	its situation
kopi	coffee	bapa saudara	uncle
sebenarnya	actually, truly	sepupu	cousin
bagus	good, splendid	lama	long
perniagaan	business	berapa lama	how long
nampaknya	it seems	pasti	sure

Lesson 11 In the Dining Room

We have breakfast, lunch and dinner in the dining room. Here you can see Encik Tan and Encik Bala. They have just arrived from Kuala Lumpur and are sitting at the dining table together with Encik Amin and his wife, Cik Asmah. Encik Amin, as the host, sits at the head of the table and his wife sits opposite him. Encik Tan sits at the end of the table on Encik Amin's right, while Encik Bala sits on Encik Amin's left opposite Encik Tan. The dining table is covered with a table-cloth. The maid has laid the table as usual and put out the knives, forks, spoons and glasses according to the number of guests. To the left of each person there is (provided) a napkin. Then the maid brings in the food. First she places a plate of rice in front of them. Then she places the dishes on the table. The dishes served include fish curry, long-beans, fried fish, prawn sambal, fish soup and jelly as well as bananas for dessert. Encik Amin and his wife invite Encik Tan and Encik Bala to eat with them.

Pelajaran sebelas (11)

Di bilik makan

sebelas	eleven	di sini	here
makan pagi	breakfast	menghadapi	facing
makan tengah hari	lunch	sebagai	as, such as
makan malam	dinner	tuan rumah	host

kepala head	mengangkat to bring along
kepala meja head of the table	hidangan dishes, food being served
hadapan opposite, in front	makanan food
sementara whilst	mula-mula first of all, at first
ditutup covered	nasi cooked rice
kain alas meja tablecloth	lauk curries
menyiapkan to get something ready	gulai curries
menyiapkan meja laid the table	dihidangkan is served
biasa usual, normal	kuah gravy
seperti biasa as usual	kari curry
meletakkan to place things, etc.	ikan fish
pisau knife	kari ikan fish curry
garpu fork	kacang beans, nuts
sudu spoon	sayur kacang long beans
gelas glass	goreng fry
mengikut according to	sambal sambal
jumlah number of, total	udang prawn
tiap-tiap each, every	sup soup
tiap-tiap seorang each person	agar-agar jelly
sedia ready	pisang banana
disediakan provided	untuk for
tuala towel	mulut mouth
	cuci mulut dessert

Lesson 12 Conversation at the Dinner Table

Good evening. I'm very pleased both of you could come. Let's go into the dining room. Dinner is served. Tonight I've specially prepared Malay food. Encik Salim, please sit here and Puan Salmah, over there ... How many days have you been here, in Singapore, Encik Salim?

Oh, only a few days, since last Monday. We regret we are going back to Kuala Lumpur tomorrow.

Is this your first visit here?

The first time for my wife, but I've been here several times before. I have to come here at least once a year on business, and I feel quite at home here. What do you think of Singapore, Encik Salim?

Oh, I think Singapore has made tremendous progress. There are a lot of new buildings and flats being built here and there.

Thank you, what about the weather here?

Not very different from Kuala Lumpur.

Do have some more chicken, Encik Salim.

No, thank you. I'm full.

How about you, Puan Salmah?

Yes, just a little bit. The food is indeed delicious. Please have some kuih suji and a banana, Encik Salim. Yes, I like kuih suji. What about you, Puan Salmah? I like it too, thank you.

Pelajaran duabelas (12) Perbualan di meja makan

dapat can, could	setahun once a year
terhidang is served	urusan to arrange, to deal
pada malam ini tonight	urusan perniagaan on business
sengaja specially, purposely, deliberately	merasa feel
sediakan prepared	negeri country, state
cara Melayu Malay style	mencapai achieve
sudah already (<i>lit.</i> finished)	kemajuannya its progress
berada be at a place etc., to exist	pesat rapid, tremendous
sejak since	bangunan building
hari Isnin Monday	dibina being built
yang lalu that which has just passed	di sana sini here and there
lalu past	cuaca weather
esok, besok tomorrow	tak, tidak no
balik to return, to come back	ubahnya difference, change
pertama kali first time	ambil to take
sebelum before	ayam chicken
mesti must	kenyang full up (eaten enough)
sekurang-kurangnya at least	sedap delicious
	kuih suji name of a type of Malay cake

Lesson 13 My Bedroom

At night, when I feel tired and sleepy, I go to my bedroom and switch on the light. I take off my clothes and put on my pyjamas. Then I switch off the light and lie down on the bed. Several minutes later I fall asleep and stay in deep slumber all through the night. At exactly half past seven in the morning the alarm-clock rings and I get up. Immediately I take a towel, put on my slippers and go straight to the bathroom. I turn on the tap. While waiting for the bath to fill up I wash my face, brush my teeth and have a shave. I keep my shaving kit on a shelf in the bathroom. When the bath is

full, I turn off the tap and proceed to have a bath. Having had a bath I dry myself with the towel, then put on clean clothes. In front of the mirror, on the dressing table, you'll see a brush, a comb, a hand mirror, a bottle of perfume and talcum powder. These things belong to my wife. My clothes, such as my shirts, handkerchiefs, socks, ties and others I keep in the wardrobe. Dirty clothes I put in the laundry basket, and I'll send them to the laundry. Suits and other clothes are put on clothes hangers and I keep them in the wardrobe.

Pelajaran tigabelas (13)

Bilik tidur saya

tigabelas thirteen
terasa feel
penat tired
mengantuk sleepy
memasang switching on
tukar change
memakai wear, put on (clothes)
pakaian tidur pyjamas
padamkan switch off
katil bed
tertidur fall asleep
nyenyak sound sleep, deep slumber
sepanjang all through
tepat sharp, exactly, to the point
setengah half (one half)
bangun to wake up, to get up
terus straight away
mengambil to take
pakai to wear
selipar slipper
pergi to go
buka to turn on
paip air tap
menunggu waiting
tangki tank, water tank, bath
penuh full
tutup to turn off
muka face
menggosok brushing
gigi teeth, tooth
bercukur having a shave
alat equipment, instrument
alat pencukur shaving kit

keringkan to dry up
badan body
bersih clean
cermin mirror
meja hias dressing table
sebatang a, an (for a straight object)
berus brush
sebilah a, an (for a knife-like object that has a blade)
sikat comb
bertangkai with a stalk, with a stem, having a handle like a cup
botol bottle
sebotol a bottle
wangi sweet smell
minyak wangi perfume
kotak box
sekotak a box
bedak face powder, talcum powder
barang thing
kepunyaan belongs to, owned by
kemeja shirt
sapu tangan handkerchief
setokin sock, stocking
tali leher tie
almari cupboard
almari pakaian wardrobe
kotor dirty
bakul laundry basket
hantar send
kedai shop
kedai dobi laundry (shop)
sut suit

Lesson 14 In the Morning and at Night

What time do you usually get up in the morning?
Usually at seven-thirty.
Why so early in the morning?
Because I have to catch a bus early in the morning to go to town.
What time do you get to the office?
Usually at eight-thirty.
Do you work at the office all day?
Sometimes I work at the office all day, sometimes I don't.
What do you do in the evening?
I usually stay at home. Once or twice a week we go to the pictures.
Yesterday we went to see a film which was most interesting. We seldom go dancing.
Do you like dancing?
Yes, I like dancing. I used to go dancing when I was young, but not any more now because I'm already old.
Old! Impossible! You don't look any older than fifty!
Actually I'm almost sixty years old.
Really? But you don't look old to me.
I'm very pleased to hear it...
Have you got any important engagement tonight? If you haven't, how about coming with me to my club? There I'll introduce you to my friends. I'd like that very much, but today is our wedding anniversary.
My heartiest congratulations.
Thank you. I might meet you tomorrow evening at eight. Would that be agreeable to you?
Yes, that'll be fine, we'll meet tomorrow evening at eight then.
Very good, thank you.

Pelajaran empatbelas (14)

Di waktu pagi dan malam

empatbelas fourteen
pukul to strike, to hit (time)
pukul berapa what time
benar true, so, correct
pagi-pagi benar early in the morning
sebab because
biasanya usually

menaiki bas to catch a bus
pejabat office
bekerja work
kadang-kadang sometimes
seminggu a week
menonton to watch (of films etc.)
wayang gambar picture, films
semalam yesterday

filem film
 menarik interesting
 jarang seldom
 majlis tari-menari dancing parties
 menari dancing
 mungkin possible
 limapuluh fifty
 enampuluh sixty
 benarkah? is it true?
 penting important
 jika if (also jikalau or kalau)
 kalau if

ikut follow
 kelab club
 kawan-kawan friends
 ulangtahun anniversary
 ulangtahun perkahwinan wedding
 anniversary
 ucapkan wish, convey, say to
 setinggi-tinggi the highest
 tahniah compliments, congratula-
 tions
 setujukah tuan? do you agree?
 molek good, fine, splendid

Lesson 15 Hotel

In Kuala Lumpur there are many first class hotels. At any time you can get a room at any one of the hotels there. If you do not want to be disappointed in getting a room, especially during the holidays, you had better make a reservation in advance. You will find the hotels in Kuala Lumpur the same as hotels in other cities. Normally you go to the reception desk and register your name there. The porters will carry your suitcases. After confirming your room and taking the key, the hotel boy will take you to your room using the lift. The hotel staff are ever willing to help you if you want to know road directions in the city. They will tell you the best places to go and the best sights to see. They will make a reservation for you, if you want to go to the pictures, and they will do everything they can for your convenience. If you need a driver to take you on a sight-seeing tour, or if you want an interpreter in your business dealings, they will find you one. If you want to do some business correspondence and require a typewriter they will lend you one. You can also have the services of a shorthand typist if you want. If your wife accompanies you she will most certainly be delighted to see new sights. She can also go shopping in the city while you are busy with your work.

Pelajaran limabelas (15) Hotel

hotel hotel
 kelas class
 bila-bila whenever

masa time
 bila-bila masa at any time
 mendapat to get, to obtain

di salah sebuah at one of
 mahu want, wish
 kecewa disappointed
 terutama especially
 musim season
 cuti holiday, leave
 musim cuti holiday season
 menempah to book (in advance)
 sama seperti same as
 bandaraya city
 hendaklah should, would, ought
 dewan hall
 sambutan reception
 mendaftarkan to register
 poter porter
 beg bag
 menentukan ascertaining
 mengambil taking
 anak kunci key
 membawa take
 budak boy
 budak hotel hotel boy
 bilik tumpangan hotel room
 menaiki going up, getting in (car)

lif lift
 sentiasa always
 menolong helping, assisting
 jalan road, street
 (ber)jalan-jalan strolling, walking
 about, driving around
 patut ought to, should
 sebaik-baiknya best
 tiket ticket
 kemudahan convenience, facility
 memerlukan require, need
 pemandu one who steers, driver
 pergi berjalan-jalan to go sightseeing
 jurubahasa interpreter
 menyediakan arrange
 menaip to type
 meminjamkan to lend
 mesin taip typewriter
 menggunakan to use
 juruterengkas shorthand typist
 sudah tentu certainly
 pemandangan views, scenery
 membeli-belah shopping
 sibuk busy

Lesson 16 Making a Reservation

We're here! Isn't this the hotel where we're going to check in?

Yes, it's called the Hotel International.

Shall I take care of the suitcases or will you?

Very well, if you want to take care of the suitcases, (go and) pay (off) the driver. I want to go inside and book the rooms.

Very well. Where shall I meet you?

I'll wait for you in the hall.

Don't be too long.

I'll be back as soon as possible.

Good morning. Can you give me a double room with a bathroom (in it)?

Or if you have two single rooms, (it's) better still.

Our rooms with baths have all been taken up. But wait, let me check. How long do you wish to stay here?

We expect to stay at least one week, or possibly two.

Very well. You can have two rooms on the second floor which have baths.

I hope the rooms are quiet. I dislike noises at night.
 I think those rooms are quiet. They face the courtyard.
 What's the rate?
 Fifty-five dollars per night including breakfast.
 All right. We'll take the rooms.
 Please fill in this form.
 Name. Nationality. Permanent Address. Place and date of birth. Signature.
 Is this in order?
 Yes, that's all, thank you. Here are your keys, sir. The hotel boy will show you to your room and carry your suitcases.

Pelajaran enambelas (16)

Menempah bilik

enambelas	sixteen	sunyi	quiet
bukankah?	isn't?	benci	hate, dislike
hendak	want	bising	noises
sewa	check in (<i>lit.</i> rent), fare	halaman	courtyard
menjaga	to take care of, to look after, to watch over	ringgit	dollars
bayarkan	please pay	bersetuju	agreed
kereta	car	isikan	fill in
tunggu	to wait	borang	form
jangan	don't	bangsa	race, nationality
lewat	late, overdue	alamat	address
jangan lewat sangat	don't be too long	tetap	permanent
secepat mungkin	as soon as possible	tarikh	date
bilik kelamin	double room	lahir	birth
bilik perseorangan	single room	tanda	mark, print
jangka	expect, guess, estimate	tanda tangan	signature
dua	two	kunci	key, lock
		menunjukkan	show

Lesson 17 In a Restaurant

In big towns there are many restaurants, cafés and bars. All large hotels have their own dining rooms or restaurants, as in the picture above. Every small group of customers has a table and on each table there is a lamp. Many of the customers in this restaurant are seen wearing beautiful clothes; such clothes are normally worn in places such as this. In this picture several couples can be seen dancing near the orchestra. One waiter is standing near

the food table and another is carrying a tray with a bottle of wine and two glasses on it. The wine bottle will be put in a bucket of ice to chill. The food in Malaysia is different from that in European countries. Rice is the staple food of the people here. It is eaten with dishes such as gulai, sambal, vegetables and gravy prepared with spices. We can choose the restaurants where we can eat Malay, Chinese, Indian or European food according to our taste. People here eat in the morning, as well as at noon and in the evening. Most people like to eat eggs and bread for breakfast. At four in the afternoon they have tea or coffee. For lunch and dinner they have more or less the same type of food. Lunch is at one o'clock and dinner at about eight o'clock. That is the custom for most people in Malaysia.

Pelajaran tujuhbelas (17)

Di sebuah restoran

tujuhbelas	seventeen	makanan-makanan	foods
restoran	restaurant	berlainan	difference from
setiap	every	Eropah	Europe
kumpulan	group	utama	main, staple
mempunyai	has, possesses	sayur-sayuran	vegetables
masing-masing	each (of persons), severally	masak	to cook, ripe
seumpama	such as, like	dimasak	to be cooked
pasangan	couples	rempah-rempah	spices
menari	dancing	memilih	to choose
berhampiran	near, close to	Tionghoa	Chinese
pancaragam	orchestra	menurut	according to
pelayan	waiter, waitress	selera	taste, appetite
berdiri	standing	telur	egg
anggur	grapes	roti	bread
dimasukkan	put into	sarapan	breakfast
balang	a type of container, a bucket	sama	same
air batu	ice	begitulah	such as, thus
batu	stone	kebiasaan	the usual case, habitual
supaya	so that	sebahagian besar	greater part of, most
sejuk	chill, cold		

Lesson 18 Ordering Food

Waiter, is this table taken?
 Sorry, sir, these two tables have just been booked by telephone, but that table there is available.

What a pity, actually we would like to sit near the dance floor. Never mind, we'll sit there... May we have the menu, please?
 Here it is, sir.
 Now let me see. What would you like to have, Asmah?
 Oh, I'm not very hungry. I don't want to eat much... I just want sateh and a bowl of mutton soup.
 Hm, I'm very hungry. Please bring me sateh, fried rice and chicken soup.
 What would you like to drink, sir?
 Please bring me a glass of lime juice. What would you like to drink, Asmah?
 I'll have lime juice, too.
 Please bring two glasses of lime juice.
 Very well... What sweets would you like to have?
 We want jelly.
 Yes, please bring jellies and two cups of coffee.
 Would you like milk with your coffee?
 Yes, with milk, but not too much.
 What beautiful music the orchestra is playing!
 Waiter, may we have the bill, please?
 Very well. Here it is, sir.
 Here's the money.
 Thank you very much, sir.
 Not at all.

Pelajaran lapanbelas (18) Menempah makanan

lapanbelas eighteen
 kedua-dua both
 talipun telephone
 kosong empty, not taken, available
 sayang a pity, what a shame (*lit.* fond of)
 tidak mengapa never mind
 tolong please (*lit.* help)
 daftar register, menu
 daftar makanan menu
 lapar hungry
 cuma merely
 sateh sateh (specially grilled beef etc. eaten with specially prepared gravy)

kambing goat
 sop kambing mutton soup
 nasi goreng fried rice
 sop ayam chicken soup
 limau lime, orange
 manis-manisan sweets, desserts
 susu milk
 pekat thick
 lagu song
 dimainkan oleh played by
 merdu melodious, sweet, beautiful, pleasing to the ear
 bil bill
 wang money
 sama-sama not at all

Lesson 19 Numbers, Times and Dates

If I want to know what time it is, I look at my watch. I have a gold watch with a leather strap. It keeps accurate time and is seldom out of order. If it is out of order I will take it to the watchmaker's to have it repaired and cleaned. I don't think you will find it so difficult to tell the time in Bahasa Malaysia. First of all let us say "pukul satu" or "jam satu", "pukul tiga" and so on. Twelve o'clock can mean twelve o'clock midnight or midday. And to calculate the quarters, we say, for example, a quarter past eight or fifteen minutes past eight, half past eight or thirty minutes past eight, eight forty-five or a quarter to nine. Other times are said as follows: five past eight, ten past eight, twenty past eight, twenty-five past eight, forty minutes past eight, twenty minutes to nine, ten to nine, five to nine. As for dates, we say, for instance: Encik Ahmad was born on the twentieth of June, nineteen fifty. When you say the numerals you must do so clearly, for example: ten, twenty, thirty, forty, fifty, sixty, seventy, eighty, ninety, a hundred or one hundred, a thousand or one thousand, one million or a million, and so on.

Pelajaran sembilanbelas (19) Angka, masa dan tarikh

sembilanbelas nineteen
 angka figure
 jam tangan watch
 emas gold
 bertali having a strap of
 kulit leather, skin
 jalannya its working
 tepat accurate
 rosak damage, out of order
 kedai jam watchmaker's
 dibaiki to be repaired
 dibersihkan to be cleaned
 susah difficult
 sebut to say, to utter
 pukul satu, jam satu one o'clock
 bererti means, can mean
 tengah middle
 tengah malam midnight

tengah hari midday
 kiraan suku counting of quarters
 misalnya for example
 suku a quarter
 kurang suku pukul sembilan a quarter to nine
 dilahirkan was born
 haribulan th., st., rd. (*lit.* day and month)
 Jun June
 seribu one thousand
 ratus the hundredth digit
 puluh the tenth digit
 menyebut to say, to articulate
 terang clear
 umpamanya for example
 juta the millionth digit

Lesson 20 Days and Months

Do you know the days of the week?

Yes, they are Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday and Saturday.

Now let's say today is Wednesday, what day is tomorrow?
Thursday.

What day is the day after tomorrow?
Friday.

What day was yesterday?
Tuesday.

What day was the day before yesterday?
Monday.

It so happens last Monday was my birthday.
Really? Congratulations!

Thank you. Now let's mention the names of the months.
January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September,

October, November, December.
Good. ... Oh, yes, can you please tell me what the correct time is now?

I can, my watch says it's a quarter to two, but don't depend on it,
sometimes it's fast and sometimes it's slow.

Pelajaran duapuluh (20) Nama hari dan bulan

duapuluh twenty
bulan month
tahukah? do you know?
Ahad Sunday
Isnin Monday
Selasa Tuesday
Rabu Wednesday
Khamis Thursday
Jumaat Friday
Sabtu Saturday
katakanlah let's say, say
lusa day after tomorrow
kelmarin day before yesterday
kebetulan it so happens, incident-
ally

harijadi birthday
tahniah congratulations, compli-
ments
Januari January
Februari February
Mac March
April April
Mei May
Julai July
Ogos August
September September
Oktober October
November November
Disember December
lambat slow, late

Lesson 21 Singapore and Malaysian Currencies

If you go to Singapore or Malaysia, you will surely want to know about the currencies of the two countries. Although it may be puzzling at first, you will soon understand them, for there is very little difference between the currencies of the two countries. The copper coins are worth one cent, while the other coins are worth five cents, ten cents, twenty cents and fifty cents. These coins are in circulation quite a lot because they are used by a lot of people. Other than coins, there are also notes to the value of one dollar, five dollars, ten dollars, fifty dollars, one hundred dollars, five hundred dollars and one thousand dollars. There is also a twenty-five dollar note in circulation in Singapore. If you buy goods worth one dollar and seventy-five cents, you use a one dollar note, and fifty, twenty and five cent coins. If you buy stamps worth seventy-five cents and you give the postal clerk a one dollar note, he will give you as change a twenty cent and a five cent coin.

Pelajaran duapuluh satu (21) Wang Singapura dan Malaysia

matawang currency
meskipun although
pada mulanya at first, at the begin-
ning
agak guess, somewhat
membingungkan puzzling
memahaminya understand
duit money (see also wang)
tembaga copper
bernilai worth, valued at
sen cent
syiling coins
peredarannya its circulation
digunakan used by

ramai many, plenty, numerous (of
people)
orang ramai the public
kertas paper
wang kertas notes
membeli buying
berharga costs, having the price of,
valued at
stem stamps
bayar to pay
kerani clerk
pos post
kerani pos postal clerk
kembalikan to return

Lesson 22 At the Bank

Can I change some money?

Certainly. What currencies do you wish to change?

I have some French money, American dollars and Indonesian Rupiahs.

Please count your money. If you can wait a minute, I'll tell you its exchange value. The exchange value of all your foreign currencies is \$ 253.00 (Two hundred and fifty three dollars). Do you agree?

I agree. Please give me one hundred dollar note, one fifty dollar note, five ten dollar notes, ten five dollar notes and the rest in one dollar notes.

Here you are, sir, all of it.

Can you please give me ten ten cent coins? I want to use the telephone, but haven't got ten cent coins. Thank you. Excuse me. May I open a current account here?

Please go to the desk over there marked Current Account. The clerk there will attend to it.

Good afternoon, sir, actually I'd like to open a current account here so that I can make payments by cheque.

How much do you wish to deposit in your current account, sir?

There's two thousand dollars here. I think this should last me some time.

May I have your personal particulars, please?

Certainly.

Here's the cheque book. If you send a cheque through the post, it must be crossed. You can also use cash cheques.

Pelajaran duapuluh dua (22) Di bank

Perancis France
Amerika America
rupiah Indonesian currency
sebentar a while
tunggu sebentar wait a minute, wait a while etc.
nilai value
nilai tukarannya its exchange value
asing foreign
wang asing foreign currency
sebanyak for, in the amount of
sekeping a sheet of, a piece of
sekeping wang kertas seratus ringgit a one hundred dollar note
baki balance, the rest
membuka to open
kira-kira account(s)

simpanan the keeping of things in a safe place, deposit
semasa current
kira-kira simpanan semasa current account
menguruskannya will attend to it
memudahkan to make easy
membuat to make
pembayaran payments
melalui by means of, through
cek cheque
butir-butir details, particulars
butir-butir mengenai diri personal particulars
mengirim to send, sending
dipalang crossed
tunai cash
cek tunai cash cheque

Lesson 23 Postal Service

Post Offices are found in small and large towns all over Malaysia. In the city of Kuala Lumpur there is a General Post Office. If you want to send a letter, a postcard or a small packet, you do not have to go to the post office. You simply drop them into the letter boxes by the roadside. These letter boxes are red in colour. If you want to send a telegram you should go to the nearest post office or you can do it by telephone. The letters in the letter boxes will be collected several times a day. If you want your letters to arrive fast you should send them by air mail. Your letters will be delivered to your house by the postman. Telegrams will be delivered by the telegraph dispatchers from the telegraph office. Here you can see what it is like inside a post office. On one side of the long counter are several members of the public and on the other side are the postal clerks. One of the people in the picture is buying stamps, one is registering a letter and another one writing out a telegram. If you want to buy stamps, you should go to the stamp counter. If you go to the wrong counter you will be wasting your time. If you want to send a parcel, you give it to the postal clerk to be weighed. He will inform you of the postal charges necessary according to the weight. In most post offices there are public telephone booths. What you should do; first lift the receiver, put a ten cent coin in the slot provided, then dial the number you want.

Pelajaran duapuluh tiga (23) Perkhidmatan pos

perkhidmatan services
pekan town
di seluruh all over
Pejabat Pos Besar General Post Office
poskad postcard
bungkusan parcel
perlu necessary
petisurat letter box
tepi jalan by the roadside
tersebut aforesaid
berwarna having the colour of
merah red
taligram telegram
menghantarnya to send it
diambil taken, collected
kali times
udara air

pos udara air mail
posmen postman
penghantar taligram telegraphic dispatchers
pejabat taligram telegraphic office
melihat to see
bahagian part, section
panjang long
orang awam public, common people
membuang wasting, throw away
ditimbang to weigh, to be weighed, to consider
angkat lift, pick up
gagang receiver (of telephone)
putar dial
nombor number

Lesson 24 At the Post Office

Excuse me, can you please direct me to the nearest post office?

I'm sorry, I don't know myself. I'm not from here. Perhaps that man can help you.

Thank you... I'm sorry to trouble you. Can you direct me to the nearest post office, please?

Yes, in Jalan Raja. There's a post office there. Actually, I'm going there, too. If you come with me, I'll show you.

You're very kind.

There it is, that building there.

Thank you, sir.

You're welcome.

I want to send a telegram. Where can I get the form?

Oh, yes, here it is, please write your name and address on the back of this form. The charge is one dollar eighty cents.

Can you show me where I can buy stamps and registered envelopes, please?

At the counter over there.

Thank you. ... Please give me a fifty cent stamp and a large registered envelope.

Is an envelope of this size suitable?

Yes, it is, thank you. Please tell me the cost of the stamps for this letter?

For ordinary letters fifteen cents and for a registered letter seventy five cents.

Pelajaran duapuluh empat (24)

Di pejabat pos

tunjukkan to show, to point out

mengganggu to trouble, to disturb

baik hati kind-hearted

borang form

bayarannya its payment

seringgit one dollar

sampul envelope

sampul surat envelope (*lit.* letter envelope)

berdaftar registered

panjang long

sesuaikah? is it suitable?

berukuran having a measurement of

surat biasa ordinary letter

surat berdaftar registered letter

Lesson 25 Travel

Those who want to travel either for pleasure or on business can use various means of transport. For instance, the cheapest is the bicycle. On the other

hand, by motor cycle you can travel fast and cheaply, but for long distances it is quite tiring. Those who travel by car can travel long distances in comfort and without feeling tired. Large ships sail across the oceans from one country to another. Aeroplanes can carry passengers anywhere in the world in a few hours, while other means of transport take several days. But most of us still prefer to travel by train. Look at the picture of a busy railway station. A train is ready to leave. Several passengers can be seen looking out of the window, watching the passengers who arrive late hurriedly looking for vacant seats. At another platform can be seen a train that has just arrived. Several passengers are getting off and others are getting on. Those who have not purchased tickets in advance have to queue up to buy tickets. At the bookshop, many people are buying books, magazines and newspapers to read during the journey. A restaurant nearby is full of people eating hurriedly while others are seen sitting and talking.

Pelajaran duapuluh lima (25)

Pelayaran

pelayaran travel, voyage

belayar to travel, to go on a voyage, to sail

samada whether

makan angin for pleasure, for a holiday or enjoyment

berbagai-bagai various

kenderaan transport

murah cheap, inexpensive

basikal bicycle

selain dari itu other than that

menunggang to ride, riding

motosikal motorcycle

berpergian travel, go about

jauh far away

perjalanan jauh long distance journey

menaiki go by (*lit.* get into)

tanpa without

kapal ship, liner

mengharungi to cross, to wade through

lautan ocean (from laut: sea)

kapalterbang aeroplane

penumpang passenger

dunia world, universe

jam hour

lama long time

stesyen station

stesyen keretapi railway station

bersedia in the state of readiness

berangkat to leave, to depart

menjenguk looking out of a window etc.

memerhatikan watching

terlewat late (e.g. on arrival)

tergopoh-gapah hurriedly, hastily

mencari looking for, to find

pelantar platform

keluar come out

terpaksa have to (*lit.* was forced to)

beratur to form a line, to queue up

majallah magazine, journal

tergesa-gesa hurriedly, hastily

Lesson 26 At the Railway Station

Porter, please carry my luggage.
Where do you want to go, sir?
I'm going to Kuala Lumpur. Please attach this label to my bag, but please put this suitcase and small bag on the rack. All right.
What class?
First Class. Please get me a seat near the buffet car.
Have you bought the ticket?
No. Where's the ticket counter?
Follow me, sir, I'll show you. Here it is, sir. I'll wait for you here.
Please give me one first class ticket to Kuala Lumpur.
Return ticket?
No. Single ticket. Do I have to change trains afterwards?
No. You don't have to change trains. This train goes direct to Kuala Lumpur.
Thank you.
Not at all.
Here's your seat. I've found a seat for you near the buffet car. When the steward comes you can place your order for food with him.
What time will this train arrive in Kuala Lumpur?
You are expected to arrive in Kuala Lumpur at a quarter past seven in the morning.
Thank you. Here's some money, please take it.
Thank you, sir. I hope you'll have a pleasant journey.
There's some time yet, I want to go and buy some novels or magazines to read during the journey.
You should be careful, sir. This train leaves in about ten minutes' time.
I'll only be about five minutes buying the books.

Pelajaran duapuluh enam (26) Di stesyen keretapi

ikatkan	tie up	kelak	afterwards, later on
kad	card	memesan	to order
kereta bufe	buffet car (in a train)	sampai	arrive, reach
belum	not yet	dijangka	expected
tempat jual tiket	ticket counter	rehat	relax, pleasant
tiket pergi balik	return ticket	berhati-hati	be careful, cautious

Lesson 27 Travelling by Ship and Plane

On Wednesday last week, I went to the wharf at Port Klang because I wanted to see a friend who was travelling to Perth on a large liner. How beautiful the liner looked seen from the jetty at the edge of the pier. Because I had a pass I was able to go onto the ship and look around. From the deck of the ship I was able to see a huge crane lifting cargo into the cargo hatch. I saw sailors working in various parts of the ship, and their captain giving orders from the bridge. Then the siren sounded and the visitors came down by the gangway. At last the liner began to move and the passengers stood by the railings waving (their hands saying) goodbye to their friends standing down below among the crowd. The ship moved slowly leaving the port, passing in front of the jetty and gradually disappeared from sight. A few days later, I went to Singapore. It was an urgent trip and I went by plane. I went to the airport in a car specially provided by my company. At the airport I saw several aeroplanes waiting. I went aboard one of them and at twelve o'clock sharp the plane took off. In a short while it was airborne. I saw the Straights of Malacca and a little later I arrived in Singapore. The pilot made a perfect landing and I got off.

Pelajaran duapuluh tujuh (27) Berlayar dengan kapal dan kapalterbang.

dermaga	wharf	arahan	orders, directives
pelabuhan	port	bilik jurumudi	the bridge
Pelabuhan Kelang	Port of Klang	semboyan	siren
menemui	to meet, to see	berbunyi	sounded
betapa	how (said with an expression of wonder and disbelief)	pelawat	visitors
manakala	when, as	turun	descend, come down
manakala dilihat	as seen	anaktangga	gangway
jeti	jetty	akhirnya	at last, eventually
pangkalan	pier	bergerak	to move, moving
pas	pass	pagar	fence
oleh	by	pagar kapal	railings
oleh kerana	because	melambai	waving hands
dari	from	mengucapkan	saying, wishing
dek	deck	selamat	safe
alat pemunggah	crane	tinggal	to stay
muatan	cargo, luggage	selamat tinggal	goodbye
petak	hatch, compartment	orang ramai	the public
kelasi	sailor	meninggalkan	leaving
kapten	captain	beransur-ansur	moving slowly
		menghilang	disappear, disappearing

pandangan	view, opinion	angkasa	airborne, in the air
pemergian	departure, trip, journey	selat	straits
mustahak	important	Selat Melaka	Malacca Straits
lapangan terbang	airport	sejurus	in a little while
khas	special	mendaratkan	to land, landing
syarikat	company	cekap	efficient, with skill
bertolak	took off (<i>lit.</i> to leave)	mendaratkan kapal terbang dengan	
seketika	a short while	cekap	made a perfect landing

Lesson 28 Travelling by Ship

If you want to go overseas, either by ship or by plane, you must first get a passport and ticket and get yourself inoculated. If the ship you are travelling on is anchored outside the harbour, you will have to go by motorboat to reach the ship. Before the ship sails, your passport and your health certificate will be checked by the immigration and health officers. On board the ship there are cabins for first class, second class and third class passengers. On my voyage before I was not sea-sick, because the sea was calm and there were no big waves. If I felt tired I sat in my room, walked about on the deck or sat resting in a deck chair. I was very pleased indeed because on board I was able to get to know many other passengers. Apart from that I was able to see the great big ocean and ports in other countries when the ship called to load and unload cargoes. As the ship was coming into port, we were informed that the ship would be berthed at the pier. If we were carrying dutiable goods, we had to declare them to the customs officers. We were advised not to try and evade duties, for it was an offence to do so. I did not carry any dutiable goods.

Pelajaran duapuluh lapan (28) Berlayar menaiki kapal

sekiranya	if	motobot	motorboat
luar negeri	overseas	sebelum	before
terlebih dahulu	first (<i>lit.</i> before proceeding further)	surat suntik	health certificate
paspot	passport	diperiksa	examined, checked
bersuntik	to have an inoculation	pegawai	officers
tumpang	boarding as a passenger	imigresen	immigration
berlabuh	anchored	kesihatan	health
di luar	outside	pegawai imigresen	immigration officer

pegawai kesihatan	health officer	singgah	stop at a place en route, called at
mabuk	travel sickness, sea-sick (<i>lit.</i> intoxicated)	memunggah	to load and unload
laut	sea	diberitahu	was informed
tenang	calm	himpit	berthed
bergelombang	having waves	bercukai	having tax on, i.e. with tax, having duty on
bersiar-siar	walk about taking fresh air	barang-barang bercukai	dutiable goods
berehat	resting	kastam	customs
berkenalan	to get to know people	dinasihatkan	was advised
di samping	besides, apart from	mengelakkan	evade
luas	vast, great, big	cukai	tax, duty
lautan luas	vast ocean	perbuatan	action
menyaksikan	to witness, witnessing	kesalahan	mistake, offence

Lesson 29 In the City Centre of Kuala Lumpur

We are now in Jalan Tun Perak, which is quite a busy road in the centre of the city of Kuala Lumpur. This road is one of the most important shopping centres. There are offices, commercial firms, banks and shops selling various types of goods, and not far from here is the General Post Office. Jalan Tun Perak is always busy with people doing their shopping; among them are also found tourists from overseas. Roads all over the town are always busy with traffic such as buses, motorcars, taxis, lorries, motorcycles, bicycles and other vehicles. The pavements are full of pedestrians. In some places it is very dangerous to cross the road. To prevent accidents, traffic lights are placed in some places and members of the police are on duty to direct traffic. Before crossing the road, we must first look left and right, then cross. Such practices can avoid accidents. At night, the roads all over Kuala Lumpur are lighted with street lights. You can see lamp posts on either side of the road. A lot of shops use neon lights to advertise their goods. The scenes in Kuala Lumpur streets become more beautiful.

Pelajaran duapuluh sembilan (29) Di pusat bandar Kuala Lumpur

pusat	centre	pusat membeli-belah	shopping centre
jalanraya	road, street	terpenting	most important
ditengah-tengah	in the middle of	gedung-gedung perniagaan	commercial firms
merupakan	forms		

menjual	selling	kemalangan	accidents
beranika	various	mengelakkan	to prevent
pelancung	tourist	lampu	light, lamp
sekitar	around	isyarat	signal
bas	bus	lalulintas	traffic
teksi	taxi	lampu isyarat lalulintas	traffic light
lori	lorry	anggota	member
kakilima	pavement (<i>lit.</i> five feet way)	anggota polis	member of the police
berjalan	walking	bertugas	on duty, at work
berjalan kaki	walking (on foot)	mengarahkan	directing
orang-orang berjalan kaki	pedestrians	amalan	practices, habits
amat	very	diterangi	lighted with
merbahaya	dangerous	tiang post	
menyeberang	crossing	tiang lampu	lamp post
menyeberang jalan	crossing the road	lampu neon	neon light
		mengiklankan	to advertise, advertising

Lesson 30 Asking for Directions

Excuse me, sir, can you please show me the way to Jalan Tun Perak?

Yes, you follow this road straight on till you reach a big building in Jalan Tuanku Abdul Rahman. You walk on for approximately a quarter of a mile, then turn left. That is Jalan Tun Perak.

Thank you. How long does it take to get there?

If you walk it'll only take about fifteen minutes.

Are there buses going there?

Yes. But you'd better ask the policeman who is over there. He'll answer all your questions.

Thank you.

Excuse me. May I ask you a question?

Yes, you may.

Are there buses from here to Jalan Tun Perak?

Yes. You can take any of the buses from this stop to go there. You ask the conductor to drop you near Jalan Melayu.

Thank you.

Is this the bus going to Jalan Melayu?

Yes, sir. Get on quickly. All seats are taken up. You can stand, but no standing on the steps. Excuse me, sir, no smoking here. ... Please pay your fare, sir.

Please let me know when we get to Jalan Melayu.

All right.

Jalan Melayu, sir. You can get off here, sir.

Thank you.

Pelajaran tigapuluh (30)

Bertanya arah jalan

bertanya	asking	perhentian bas	bus stop
arah	direction	penjaga tiket	ticket collector, conductor
batu	stone, mile	menurunkan	to let off (<i>lit.</i> to put down)
jauhnya	distance	bayar	to pay
belok	turn	tambang	fare
menerangkan	to explain	beritahu	inform
segala	all	turun	get down, get off
pertanyaan	question		
sebarang	any		

Lesson 31 A Visit to Kuala Lumpur

Kuala Lumpur is situated in the central part of the Malayan Peninsula. In the course of its development Kuala Lumpur has been expanding both in area and population. Tall buildings can be found everywhere and there are many main roads. There is a lot of traffic. Because of its rapid change, Kuala Lumpur has become a popular centre for tourists from overseas. Here there are two stadiums, namely Stadium Merdeka and Stadium Negara. It is at these two stadiums that important events are held such as the National Day Celebration, sports, the Koran reading contests and other interesting events. Petaling Jaya is a new town. This town is a large housing estate. Besides residential houses, there are also schools, markets, even factories which produce all sorts of goods for local needs as well as for export to other countries. In Kuala Lumpur there are many institutes of higher education such as universities, teachers' colleges, technical colleges and institutes of education. The Malaysian Parliament building is situated on a hill and the scenery around it is beautiful and very attractive. Not far from there, there is the National Memorial Monument. This monument is often visited by foreign dignitaries who come to Malaysia. Not far from the city of Kuala Lumpur there is a lake and a garden called Taman Bunga. The

area around this lake is extensive and beautiful. There are stalls selling food and drinks. Because of the size of the area, quite a number of people drive around in cars. Visitors to this park are able to see and enjoy the beauty of trees with thick foliage and the sweet smell of flowers in full bloom, while they sit on benches which are provided under the trees there.

Pelajaran tigapuluh satu (31) Melawat ke Kuala Lumpur

melawat to visit, visiting
letaknya is situated
semenanjung peninsular
saat stage (*lit.* seconds)
pembangunan development
berkembang expanding
segi aspect, in respect of
penduduk population
tinggi tall, high
dimana-mana saja everywhere
perubahan change
menjadi become
tempat tumpuan centre of attraction
kerap often
diadakan is held, is staged (*lit.* brought into existence)
upacara sambutan celebration
event, reception
Hari Kebangsaan National Day
sukan sports
pertandingan contests, competitions
membaca to read, reading
perumahan housing
kawasan perumahan housing estate
kediaman residential
rumah-rumah kediaman residential houses
sekolah school
pasar market
kilang factory
kilang-kilang perusahaan industrial factories
perusahaan industry

mengeluarkan producing, to produce
keperluan necessity
tempatan local
ekspot export
pengajian learning
tempat-tempat pengajian tinggi places of higher learning
universiti university
maktab college
perguruan teaching (*lit.* concerning teaching)
teknikal technical
institusi pelajaran institute of education
Parlimen Parliament
bukit hill
indah attractive, beautiful
Tugu Peringatan Kebangsaan National Monument
dikunjungi visited by
tetamu kehormat foreign dignitaries (*lit.* guests who are honourable)
tasik lake
pondok stalls
makanan foods
minuman drinks
pengunjung those who visit
menikmati to enjoy, enjoying
keindahan beauty
rendang of thick foliage
pohon tree (see also pokok)
kembang full bloom (of flowers)
harum sweet-smelling
semerbak that gives out scent, pervasive of scent

Lesson 32 Tin Ore

Malaysia is one of the tin exporting countries. Most of the tin ore is found in the Kinta River Valley in the state of Perak. This metal has brought wealth to the country. Manufacturers of tin-plated containers use this metal to prevent rust. Tin is also used in the manufacture of other metals such as welding material, pewter and bronze. Tin is an expensive metal because of its great use and because it is in great demand all over the world. Tin ore is usually obtained from the ground by means of a tray, a "palung" and dredges. The use of a tray is simple but the result is very little; a tray is suitable only for a small scale operation. Trays are used by women to sieve for tin ore mixed in the silt on the river banks. A "palung" is usually used on hillsides. The soil there is broken up by shooting at it with jets of water from a water pump. The resulting silt is pumped up onto the "palung" which is erected on a wooden structure. The tin ore remains at the bottom of the troughs when the water in the sloping troughs flows out of the "palung". The dredge is like a ship and a house. It has scooping buckets. These buckets scoop silt from the bottom of the ponds and take it into the dredge. The silted mud is washed away with water and the tin ore will be left behind and then transferred to some other place. The ore smelters in Penang will process the ore into fine tin.

Pelajaran tigapuluh dua (32) Bijih timah

bijih timah tin ore	tembaga putih pewter
sebahagian besar most, a major part of	gangsa bronze
lembah valley	besar gunanya its great use
sungai river	diperlukan is required by, in great demand
Sungai Kinta name of a river in the state of Perak	diperolehi is obtained
logam metal	dulang a kind of container used to sieve tin ore
kekayaan wealth	palung a device used in extracting tin ore
pembuat-pembuat makers	sesuai suitable
bekas container	usaha effort, work
disalut dengan bijih timah tin-plated	peringkat scale, level
menggunakan use	dikerjakan is worked
mencegah to prevent	tebing sungai river bank
karat rust	menapis to sieve, sieving
pateri welding material	bercampur mixed with

lumpur silted mud
 ditanggalkan is loosened (*lit.* is
 taken off, is stripped off)
 dipancarkan air shooting with jets
 of water
 pam air water pump
 dipam is pumped
 binaan structure, building
 kayu wood
 binaan kayu wooden structure
 tertinggal is left, remained
 ruang-ruang troughs
 mencerun inclined

mengalir flows
 kapal korek dredge
 baldi pencedok scooping bucket
 dasar bottom of
 dasar kolam bottom of pond
 kolam pond
 mengangkut carrying and conveying
 disiram spray with water, wash
 dialih removed, transferred
 pelebur-pelebur smelters
 memperoses to process, processes
 timah tin
 halus fine

Lesson 33 At a Shopping Centre

I have been to a shopping centre in the city of Kuala Lumpur. At this centre there are many shopkeepers, and they are both men and women. They are very courteous and very good at attending to their customers. All sorts of goods are found here, namely earthenware, clothes, hardware, watches, cameras, canned food and many others. I looked around from one section to another; from the umbrella section to the glove section and from the miscellaneous goods section to the section where they only sold lace. I went upstairs using the lift and the escalator. While I was in the section where they sold books, I was pleasantly surprised to meet an old friend of mine. I had not met her for a long time, because she now lives overseas and had just come here on holiday. We went to a restaurant and had lunch together. She told me that she had got married and she brought along one of her sons. Her son would go to a school here and live with his grandmother who is a widow. His grandfather had just died. It was almost two o'clock when we finished lunch. Then we went shopping. I helped her to choose things to buy as presents for her sons. I cannot describe how happy we were. We had been friends for a long time and had not met for ten or eleven years.

Pelajaran tigapuluh tiga (33) Di pusat membeli-belah

penjual seller
 peramah courteous and talkative
 melayani attending to, entertain
 pembeli buyer

bermacam-macam all sorts, all
 kinds
 tembikar earthenware
 dibuat is made
 besi steel
 barang-barang diperbuat daripada
 besi goods made from steel
 kamera camera
 barang-barang makanan dalam tin
 canned foods
 sarung tangan glove
 beranika jenis various kinds, all
 sorts of
 renda laces
 eskalator escalator

terkejut surprised
 bertemu to meet, meeting
 seberang laut overseas
 bercuti on leave
 berkahwin married
 nenek grandmother
 janda widow
 datuk grandfather
 meninggal dunia passed away (*lit.*
 left the world)
 selesai finished, completed
 hadiah gifts, presents
 menggambarkan to describe (*lit.* to
 paint a picture of)

Lesson 34 Shopping

Excuse me, can you please show me the place where they sell handbags?
 There, madam, next to the place where they sell books.
 Thank you. Is this where they sell handbags?
 Yes, what type do you want? Leather or plastic?
 Let me see for myself.
 You're welcome, madam. Big or small bags?
 I want a medium size, white.
 I think this leather handbag suits you.
 I agree, this bag looks nice. How much?
 Twenty-two dollars and fifty cents, madam.
 All right, I'll take it. Now please show me where they sell shoes.
 Please follow me, madam, I'll show you. What type of shoes do you want?
 Soft leather, high heels or low?
 I want good quality leather shoes with low heels.
 Here's a pair. Maybe they are the right size for you. Try them on first.
 What do you think? Are they all right?
 They seem to fit but are a little bit tight at the heels. I suppose if I wear
 them often they'll stretch a little.
 Right. I agree with what you say. Is there anything else you want?
 Oh, yes, several pairs of nylon stockings, some shoe polish, a pair of scissors
 and a few safety pins.
 Come, let me show you, madam.
 Please wrap all these things, and tell me how much they cost altogether.

Thirty-one dollars and fifteen cents, madam.
Here's the money.
Thank you.

Pelajaran tigapuluh empat (34) Membeli-belah

beg tangan	handbag	tumit rendah	low heel
kulit	leather	ketat	tight
plastik	plastics	dipakai	is worn
sedehana	medium size	membesar	gets bigger, grows bigger
putih	white	sarung kaki	stockings
setuju	agree	penggilap kasut	shoe shiner, polisher
kasut	shoes	gunting	scissors
lembut	soft	pin baju	safety pins
tumit	heel	bungkus	wrap up
tumit tinggi	high heel		

Lesson 35 The Tailor

This morning I went to the tailor to have a suit made. I would like to have several pairs of trousers made because the ones I have are already old, but I can't afford to replace them yet. I have to wait till next year. I can only afford to buy a shirt. At the tailor's shop there is a lot of good material. We can choose what we like from the many different types of cloths. I chose the cloth that would suit me. The tailor took my measurements and I shall have to go again in two weeks' time for a fitting. He will probably make some adjustments and mark the places for the pockets, the button holes and the buttons themselves. After that, he will ask me to come once more to try the coat on to make sure that it will really fit me when I wear it. Last week, my wife bought several new dresses. She bought one batek sarong, a short kebaya blouse and one pelikat sarong. She wanted to buy some silk to make some dresses, but could not. She went to the shop which sells handbags and bought one that matched her dress. The handbag which she bought several years ago is no longer in fashion.

Pelajaran tigapuluh lima (35) Tukang jahit baju

tukang	craftsman	baju	dress, shirt
jahit	to sew	tukang jahit baju	tailor

pagi tadi	this morning	kocek	pocket
menempah	to order in advance	lubang	hole
sepasang	a pair of	butang	button
baju kot	coat	menyuruh	ask
seluar	trousers	menentukan	to determine
seluar panjang	trousers (lit. long trousers)	benar-benar	really
helai	pieces	pakai	to wear
buruk	old, worn out	kain batik	batik cloth
mampu	able to pay	baju kebaya pendek	short kebaya dress/blouse
belum mampu	not yet able to pay	kain sarung pelikat	pelikat sarong
menggantikannya	to replace it	sutera	silk
kemeja	shirt	berjaya	successful
kesukaan	what one likes, appreciate	tidak berjaya	unsuccessful
ukuran	measurements	sepadan	match with
mencuba	to try	fesyen	fashion
mungkin	probably, might	beberapa tahun yang lalu	several years ago
pembetulan	alterations		
menandakan	to mark		

Lesson 36 Ordering New Clothes

Good morning. I'd like to have a 'baju kurung' made, please. What sorts of material do you have? I want a light material, the colour not too dark and not too bright.
How about this cloth, sir?
The colour is much too light, it doesn't suit me. I want a slightly darker and heavier material.
How about this style, sir?
Yes, this looks good. How much does it cost including labour?
This is a very special type of cloth, guaranteed genuine silk. The cost of the material plus labour will be thirty-five dollars.
The price seems to be rather more than I expected. I wanted something slightly cheaper. But never mind.
Very well, please take your coat off so that I can take your measurements. ... Finished, sir, thank you. You may come again in two weeks' time. Will Wednesday be all right?
Yes, I agree. I'll come at about two or three o'clock in the afternoon.

At a dress shop

May I try this dress on?

You may, please follow me to the fitting room. This is the latest fashion in kebayas.

I like the style, but I don't like the colour. It's also a little bit too big.

How about this one, madam? We have this style in green, black and grey.

May I see the blue one? I think this one suits me, but the sleeves are a little bit too long.

Yes, but don't worry, madam. We will shorten them by about an inch and reduce the waist slightly. Leave it to us to do it.

Pelajaran tigapuluh enam (36)

Menempah baju baru

baju kurung a type of Malay dress
with an opening around the neck
like a jumper

nipis thin, fine

warnanya its colour

gelap dark

cerah light, bright

muda young, green

warnanya muda sangat the colour is
much too light

tebal thick

upahnya its labour cost

istimewa very special

dijamin guaranteed

asli original, genuine

sutera asli genuine silk

lebih daripada more than

jangka guess, expected

murah sedikit slightly cheaper

tidak mengapa never mind

buka undo, take off

kira-kira about, approximately

petang afternoon

kedai baju dress shop

bilik mencuba fitting room

yang terbaharu sekali the latest

saiznya its size

hijau green

kelabu grey

biru blue

khuatir worry

jangan khuatir don't worry

pendekkan shorten

inci inch

pinggang waist

serahkan leave it (to us)

Lesson 37 Buying Books

Good afternoon. I want to buy some books.

Please come in. What books do you want: magazines, novels or other books?

May I see them first?

You may, sir, these are novels, those are school text books and over there are magazines.

Have you got a beginner's book on learning Bahasa Malaysia?

Yes we have. We have many such books. You can choose which you think is best.

Excuse me, sir, can I use this book as additional reading in learning Bahasa Malaysia?

Yes, certainly. Where do you learn Bahasa Malaysia?

I learn at home on my own with the help of a Linguaphone Course. Now I've got a good command of Bahasa Malaysia.

It seems you can speak (it) very well. I think you're learning from a well organised method.

Yes, that's right. ... Please show me a Malay-English dictionary.

There are several types. Please choose.

I think this book "An Advanced Malay-English Dictionary" would be good for me.

Yes, I think so too.

Good, how much do the dictionary and the additional reading books cost?

Altogether seventeen dollars and fifty cents.

Here's the money. Please wrap the books up.

Very good, sir. Thank you.

Pelajaran tigapuluh tujuh (37)

Membeli buku

kehendaki want

nobel novel

buku-buku teks sekolah school
textbooks

permulaan beginning

buku permulaan beginner's book

yang mana which one

tambahan additional

bacaan tambahan additional reading

bantuan help, assistance

kursus course

Kursus Linguaphone Linguaphone
Course

menguasai to control, to command

sistem system

kamus dictionary

Lesson 38 The Barber and the Hairdresser

Hairdressers are very important to the public. Everyone, man or woman, old or young, always needs their services. Men have their hair cut. If they have beards or moustaches, they must be trimmed properly. Those who do not shave themselves go to the barber. Women have their hair cut and permed. Here you can see a scene in a barber's shop. One barber is busy cutting

somebody's hair and another is shaving someone. There are a number of other customers sitting on the settee waiting for their turn. Some of them are reading the newspapers and there is someone who is about to leave the shop. He has just had his hair cut and washed. The barber is brushing the hair from the back of his shirt. I usually shave myself using a razor. My elder brother uses an electric razor. Most people shave every day, but if we don't feel like it we can shave every other day. I suppose you shave yourself too, don't you? In my opinion men should shave themselves. I personally don't like it if someone else puts shaving cream on my cheek and chin. Besides it's more convenient and cheaper if you shave yourself at home than going to the barber and wasting time.

Pelajaran tigapuluh lapan (38)

Tukang gunting dan pendandan rambut

tukang gunting	barber	alat pencukur listrik	electric razor
pendandan rambut	hairdresser	malas	don't feel like doing anything,
perkhidmatan	services		lazy
bergunting	to have a haircut	berselang hari	alternate days, every
rambut	hair		other day
janggut	beards	pipi	cheek
misai	moustaches	dagu	chin
dicukur	is shaved/trimmed	dipenuhi	spread over with, is filled
dicukur rapi	is trimmed properly		with
memotong	to cut, cutting	busa	shaving cream
mengeriting	to perm	menyenangkan	convenient
pelanggan	customers	lebih menyenangkan	more con-
giliran	turn (as in a queue)		venient
meninggalkan	leaving, to leave	membuang masa	wasting time (lit.
mencuci	to wash, to shampoo		throwing away time)
memberuskan	brushing away		

Lesson 39 At the Barber's Shop

Good afternoon, sir, please come in.
Thank you. I want to have a hair cut and a shave.
Please sit down. Please wait a moment. After this it's your turn. Please sit here. Do you want to have your hair cut short or just a little?
Er ... Not too short.
Your hair is rather dry and on top it's beginning to get rather thin. It'll do it good to wash it with shampoo.

All right.
Now let me dry your hair with this towel. Do you want a shave?
Yes, and I hope you'll be very careful because my skin is rather tender.
Don't worry, sir. I've only cut someone once before, and it was because he jerked his head while I was shaving him. There you are, it's all over, sir.
Thank you. May I ask, is this the place where ladies have their hair done?
My wife wants to have her hair done.
Yes, sir, upstairs.
Can my wife come here at three o'clock tomorrow?
Wait a minute, let me find out. Yes, she can come at any time she likes.
Good. How much do you charge for the haircut?
Only two dollars and fifty cents.
Well, here's the money.
Thank you, sir.

Pelajaran tigapuluh sembilan (39)

Di kedai gunting

kedai gunting	a barber's shop	khuatir	to be anxious, to be worried,
pendek	short		to be apprehensive
kering	dry	kali	time (repetition)
mulai	to begin, beginning	sentak	to jerk, to pull back suddenly
jarang	thin, scarce, rare, sparse,	ketika	while
	widely spaced	dandan	to dress hair neatly
syampo	shampoo	mendandan	to have hair done or set
berhati-hati	to be careful, to be	wanita	women
	cautious	bahagi	divide
kulit	skin, leather	bayaran	payment, charge, fee
lembut	tender, soft, sensitive		

Lesson 40 Malaysian Fruits

Fruits such as durian, cempedak, rambutan, mangosteen, langsung and ciku are found in abundance in Malaysia. Most of these fruits are seasonal. Only a few types are found at all times of the year. Among the fruits which give good yields are durian, cempedak, rambutan, duku and langsung. During the durian season last year, I took some leave and went to my father's house in the country. I had an opportunity to eat durians from the trees planted by my father in his orchard. The durian trees planted by my father in his

orchard have been leased out to a trader. The trader comes when the trees are about to bear fruit. After counting the number of trees and estimating the fruit on the trees in the orchard he will negotiate the price with my father, until both sides agree. The trader will build a hut to keep watch on the fruit which has dropped. As I was about to return home my father gave me some durians, cempedak, rambutan and a lot of other fruit. Many kinds of fruit are exported from Malaysia such as pineapple and bananas, to other countries including Singapore. Canned pineapple commands a good market in countries in Europe and the United States of America. Every year, pineapple canning factories in Johore export millions of tins of canned pineapple to those countries. This brings in a lot of revenue to Malaysia.

Pelajaran empatpuluh (40) Buah-buahan Malaysia

mendatangkan to bring forth, to produce
peluang opportunity
pajak lease out
dagang trade, commerce
pedagang trader
berbuah to bear fruit, to have fruit
tawar menawar to bargain, to haggle
pemajak person leased out to
pondok hut

jaga to be awake, to watch for
menjaga to take care of, to guard
gugur to drop to the ground
balik to come back, to return
bekal provision
membekalkan to give someone something to take away with him
tin can
negara country

Lesson 41 Sports

In your opinion what is the most popular sport in Malaysia now?

I think perhaps football and badminton.

What about other types of outdoor games?

Games such as tennis, hockey and golf are also popular. Most of my friends like to play football, but I prefer badminton.

What about horse-racing?

I think horse-racing is not as popular here as it is in England. Apart from these, walking, running, swimming and boxing are also popular. Sporting events in Malaysia are usually held on a large scale at the Stadium Negara and Stadium Merdeka. The building of stadiums like these will spread sporting activities amongst members of the public. Football matches,

badminton and 'sepak takraw' competitions have become favourite events with the public. The same with golf tournaments. These tournaments are usually held on a big golf course in Kuala Lumpur. If you're keen on these games, you too can take part in them. If I have the opportunity, I'd certainly like to become a member of this club.

What about indoor games?

Yes, there are indoor games, such as draughts, chess, billiards, cards and table tennis.

Are you good at playing billiards?

I can play, but I'm not so good at it yet.

Pelajaran empatpuluh satu (41) Sukan

turut to follow
permainan games
bola ball
sepak to kick
lumba to race
perlumbaan racing, race
jalan to walk, to be moving
jalan kaki to walk (*lit.* to walk on foot)
lari to run
berenang to swim
tinju boxing
cara way, method, technique
secara besar-besaran in a big way
bina to build, to construct
pembinaan construction, building of
giat to be active, to be lively
kegiatan activity
bidang scope, area, field

dikalangan among
lawan to oppose, to go against, to fight
perlawanan competition
sepak takraw a type of game using a wicker ball
padang playing field, any open area covered with grass
cenderung to be inclined, to be keen, to be interested
menceburkan diri to involve one-self, to plunge
ahli member
dam draughts
catur chess
bola meja billiards
kartu cards
bola pingpong table tennis
mahir to be expert

Lesson 42 Holidaying in the Country

If you really want to have a rest during the holiday at a quiet and restful place, try and go to the countryside. Last year we went to Negeri Sembilan and stayed on a farm belonging to our brother-in-law. We were very happy to be there. The life of a farmer is not easy although he appears to be

healthy because every day there is a lot of work which he must do. He must take care to keep his farm clean. He must look after his livestock such as cattle or goats and clean their pens. If he keeps chickens, he must go to the chicken coops everyday to collect their eggs. Chickens, ducks, geese and turkeys must be fed constantly so as to fatten them. We like to eat chicken, duck and goose. We worked very hard while we were at our brother-in-law's house. Actually we were very happy particularly if the weather was fine. All the work in the ricefield and on the farm in the past used to be done by manual labour or with the help of buffaloes, but now it is different. The farmers in Malaysia use tractors quite a lot. The produce from the country is no longer taken to markets in small boats or carried on the shoulder for miles, but taken by lorries. Despite all this, a farmer's life is not so easy.

Pelajaran empatpuluh dua (42) Bercuti di kampung

sungguh-sungguh really, truly
rehat rest
sunyi quiet
ladang farm
ipar in-law
hidup to be alive, living
kehidupan life
petani farmer
mudah simple, easy
walaupun although
membersihkan to clean
binatang animal
binatang ternakan livestock
lembu cattle
kambing sheep, goat
kandang pen, stable, yard
memelihara to rear, to bring up
ayam fowl, poultry, chicken
reban ayam chicken coop

telur egg
itik duck
angsa goose
ayam Belanda turkey
gemuk fat, obese
daging meat
lebih-lebih lagi moreover
sawah rice field
masa dahulu before, in the past
dilakukan done
kerbau water buffalo
para petani farmers
guna use
sampan small wooden boat
pikul to carry on the shoulder
berbatu-batu mile upon mile
malah rather, but
angkut to carry, to transport

Lesson 43 Work on the Farm

When you're on the farm, at what time do you usually get up in the morning?

Usually at six o'clock.

Why do you get up so early?

Because there's a lot of work to be done.

During the next fruit season are you going to the farm again?

Yes, I expect so.

Of course it'll be a delightful change for you after so many years living in the town.

Yes, it will be. Life on a farm is very peaceful. We don't have to think about how we have to run for buses every morning to go to work.

Don't you have to work hard when you're on a farm?

You can if you want to. But it's not compulsory. We do whatever work we think ought to be done. There is, of course, plenty of work which can't be neglected, so we do whatever we can do.

I've never spent a holiday on a farm. Therefore, I don't know what it's like. Is that so? Next year you should come with me. You needn't worry, because you'll not be asked to work hard.

Can you be sure of that?

Certainly. For one or two weeks you'll enjoy the open air. Actually, I'd like to be a farmer myself.

Is that so? But that's not a profitable way for someone to earn a living.

Oh, I don't know. I think you'll find that there are rich and poor people in farming, just as in any other occupation.

Pelajaran empatpuluh tiga (43) Pekerjaan di ladang

pekerjaan work, occupation
musim buah fruit season
ubah to alter, to change
perubahan a change
aman peaceful
mengejar to run after
dimestikan made compulsory
diabaikan to be neglected
keadaan condition, situation
harus should, must
pasti sure

pastikan to make sure
sudah tentu certainly
nikmat pleasure, enjoyment
menikmati to enjoy
terbuka open
peladang farmer (see also petani)
penghidupan living
menguntungkan profitable
saksi witness
kaya rich, wealthy
miskin poor

Lesson 44 Part One

On the Beach

If you are in Malaysia and would like to enjoy yourself on the beach, then go to Port Dickson beach. You can go there by bus or by car. You'll not find it difficult to get a room at an hotel or rest house there. This picture shows what Port Dickson beach is really like. You can see a number of people in bathing suits. One of them is running towards the sea. He looks strong and lively because he swims every day in the sea. When we were children, we, too, liked to play with sand on the beach, building castles or forts and moats on the beach. I believe you were like that, too, when you were children. This is indeed a great pleasure for children when they go to the beach. We, too, like playing in the sand on the beach, wading in the water, and being splashed by waves till sometimes our clothes get wet with sea water. If you get bored and tired with conditions in the city of Kuala Lumpur, you can go to the beach. You'll be able to see people walking on the sand and the jetty, or do whatever you like. You can enjoy the sea breeze and the beautiful scenery, especially the sight of swaying coconut palms.

Pelajaran empatpuluh empat (44)

Bahagian pertama

Di tepi pantai

pertama first, one
pantai beach, shore
temasya a joyous occasion
bertemasya to have fun
naik to go up, to ascend
rumah tumpangan lodging
baju mandi bathing costume
cerdas active, lively
kanak-kanak child
pasir sand
istana palace, castle

kubu fort
alur groove
kegembiraan joy, happiness
dipercik to be splashed
gelombang waves
basah wet
bosan bored
daun leaf
kelapa coconut
lambai to wave

Lesson 44 Part Two

Planning a Holiday

During the school holidays this year, where are you and your younger brothers and sisters going?

I'm going to take my younger brothers and sisters to the East Coast.

What are you going to do there?

We expect a part of the holiday will be spent by the sea. We'll go by car and we'll be there for a week.

Your children are perhaps not going with you?

No, they prefer to stay with their grandparents and play with their friends than sit for hours in the car during the journey.

Where will you go first?

We'll stop at a number of towns, namely, Mersing, Kuantan and Kuala Trengganu. We feel it's not going to be a problem to find suitable accommodation. It's easy to find accommodation at government rest-houses, good hotels which are situated not far from the beach. The charges for rooms and food are quite reasonable.

What are your plans? Are you going to stay at an hotel or at a relative's house?

We'll try both. But this time we'll probably stay longer at our relative's house in Kota Bahru. We'd like to go by train from Kota Bahru to visit Sungai Golok. There we can buy goods made in Thailand such as silk, shoes, decorative objects for the house, paintings and gems. The scenery on the east coast is really beautiful. Wouldn't you like to come along with us?

I'd like to very much indeed, but let me discuss the matter with my elder sister first.

Go and discuss it, and let us know as soon as possible.

All right, I'll let you know.

Pelajaran empatpuluh empat (44)

Bahagian kedua

Merancang hari bercuti

merancang to plan
sekolah school
timur east
Pantai Timur East Coast
habis finish
dihabiskan to be spent, to be finished
berjam-jam for hours and hours
perjalanan journey
singgah to stop on the way, to call at
masalah problem
cari to seek, to look for

mencari to look for
rumah tumpangan kerajaan government rest house
elok good
senang easy
sewa rent, charge, tariff
rancangan plan
rumah persinggahan rest house
pada kali ini this time
lebih lama much longer
buatan produce of, made in
perhiasan decoration

perhiasan rumah	decorative objects	kakak	elder sister
for the house		segera	quickly
permata	gem	seberapa segera	as quickly as possible
berunding	to consult, to discuss		

Lesson 45 Part One

Travelling by Car

If you want to go to Johore Bahru by car, you should know the highway code in that state. For example, when you drive you must drive on the left, and when you want to overtake, do so on the right. In towns and in newly built-up areas, the speed limit is thirty miles per hour. Therefore, be careful when driving so that you do not exceed the speed limit, and beware of the traffic lights. If the light is green it means you may go, and if it is red you must stop your car quickly. Please take a look at the car in this picture. This car is a saloon type of 50 horse power. In the boot at the back there are a spare wheel, tools and a car jack. The fuel tank can take fourteen gallons, and with one gallon this car can travel only twenty eight miles. Now let's learn the names of some parts of the car, namely the bonnet, the body of the car, tyre, radiator, engine and steering wheel. The windscreen is equipped with wipers. On the instrument panel there are a speedometer, a clock, fuel gauge and the starter. Clutch, foot brakes and accelerator are at the driver's feet. The gear lever and the hand brakes are near the driver's hand. The driver is not visible. He's in the garage because his car's engine is out of order.

Pelajaran empatpuluh lima (45)

Bahagian pertama

Perjalanan dengan motokar

peraturan	rules, regulations, conditions	melebihi	to exceed
memandu	to drive	kuasa	power, authority
di sebelah kiri	on the left hand side	kuda	horse
memotong	to overtake, to cut, to sever	tempat menyimpan barang	boot of the car (lit. place to keep things)
had limit		persediaan	preparation
laju fast		tayar persediaan	spare tyre
had laju	speed limit	tayar	tyre
sejam	per hour	perkakas	tools
		tangki	tank

minyak	oil	pengelap	wiper
menampung	to contain	papan	board, plank
sejauh	as far as, a distance of	tunjuk	to show, to point
pelajari	to learn	papan penunjuk	instrument panel
alat	apparatus	jangkalaju	speedometer
alat penyejuk	air conditioner	penunjuk	indicator
jentera	engine	penunjuk minyak	oil indicator
kaca	glass	menghidup	to bring into life
depan	in front	alat menghidup jentera	starter
lengkap	complete	alat penekanlaju	accelerator
dilengkapi	equipped with	alat penukar gear	gear change lever
lap	to wipe	kelihatan	seen, visible

Lesson 45 Part Two

Engine Breakdown

Please check my car. I don't know what's wrong with it but this car has given me a lot of trouble. The power from the battery is almost gone because I've tried to start the engine with the starter. I've cleaned the carburettors and the plugs. Can you find out what's wrong with it? Certainly. Please park your car here. I'll call the mechanic and he'll put it right. If you come back here in about an hour's time, we'll tell you where the trouble is. Have you found out what the trouble is? Yes, but it's not too bad. The pipe from the pump is leaking. We'll replace it with a new one. All right, in the meantime please get the battery charged, the oil changed and have the car greased. And please repair the puncture in the spare tyre and check its pressure. The brakes are not effective; please test and adjust them. Straighten out the front bumper. It got dented when the car skidded and hit a lamp post. Oh, yes, please replace the rear bulbs with new ones. Actually this car needs a major repair. Please let me know when you can get the car ready.

Pelajaran empatpuluh lima (45)

Bahagian kedua

Kerosakan jentera motokar

periksa	examine, check	kehabisan	to be finished, to be run down
menyusahkan	to give trouble, to cause hardship	tenaga	energy, power

sebab	cause	tekanan angin tayar	tyre air pressure
membetulkan	to put right	sure	
teruk	to be in a serious condition	kesan	trace, effect
tidak begitu teruk	not so bad, not so serious	tidak berkesan	not effective
pam	pump	uji	test
pam minyak	fuel pump	lurus	straight
bocor	leaking, punctured	luruskan	straighten
gantikan	to replace	besi	steel, iron
sementara itu	in the meantime	penghalang	barrier
caskan	to charge (the battery)	besi penghalang hadapan	front bumper
minyak selinder	oil (lubricant)	kemik	dented
bubuh	put	tergelincir	to skid
minyak geris	grease	melanggar	to hit against something
tampalkan	to repair, to mend (of puncture)	bal	bulb
tekanan	pressure	siap	ready
angin	air, wind	siapkan	to get ready

Lesson 46 Part One Commerce and Industry

Kuala Lumpur is an important commercial and industrial centre in Asia. Among its products are food, drinks, bricks, medicines, clothes, tyres, steel and many others. Other than factories which produce these goods, there are also car assembly plants, and plants for manufacturing electrical appliances, refrigerators, fans, radios and television sets. Some of the goods produced by these factories are exported to other countries. Malaysia has quite a large area of land, but some of it is still thick jungle which has not yet been opened up and adapted for agriculture. Because of that, essential foodstuffs such as rice, sugar, beef and mutton are still imported from other countries. Similarly new factories import raw materials such as cotton from India and Pakistan, and from Iran oil for the refineries at Port Dickson. Milk and dairy products are brought from Denmark, New Zealand and Australia. Goods made in Malaysia are found quite frequently in other countries such as Singapore, the United States of America, France, Australia and other countries which have trade ties with Malaysia.

Pelajaran empatpuluh enam (46) Bahagian pertama Perniagaan dan perusahaan

perniagaan	trade, commerce	hutan	jungle, forest
rupa	look	disesuaikan	adapted
merupakan	is	bercucuk tanam	to grow crops
barang keluaran	products	beras	rice
batubata	bricks	gula	sugar
ubat-ubat	medicines	bahan	materials, ingredients
besiwaja	steel	mentah	raw, uncooked
bengkel	workshop	kapas	cotton
memasang	to put together, to assemble, to switch on	kilang penapis minyak	oil refinery
perkakas-perkakas elektrik	electrical appliances	susu	milk
peti sejuk	refrigerator	makanan yang dibuat daripada susu	dairy products
kipas angin	fan	hubungan perdagangan	trade relation, business contact

Lesson 46 Part Two A Business Interview

Good morning, sir, I'd like to see Encik Leong. Is he busy?
Have you made an appointment?
No, but here's my card. I hope you won't mind showing this card to him. I'm sure he'll be quite prepared to see me.
Just now he was talking on the phone. I hope you won't mind waiting a little. Please come in, sir.
Good morning Encik Krishnan. Please sit down. Is there anything I can do to help you?
I've got a proposition to put to you. I'm sure you know my company, Syarikat Apex Sdn. Bhd. (Private Limited).
Yes, I do indeed, but I've not had the opportunity of making contact with you.
Very well, Encik Leong. We market a lot of our goods through our branches in Singapore, Hongkong, Indonesia, Australia and New Zealand. We would like to establish contact with an experienced company here, like your company. That being the case, we hope your company would be willing to be our agent here.
I cannot make a decision until I've discussed the matter with my partner.

I'll try and telephone him. Hello. Is that Encik Lim? I've just received a very good business proposition. I'd like to discuss it first with you. Can you come over to the office right away? I beg your pardon, I can't hear very clearly what you say... Please come to the office right away. All right.

Pelajaran empatpuluh enam (46)

Bahagian kedua

Temuduga perniagaan

temuduga interview
urusan business
perjanjian agreement, treaty,
appointment
keberatan to be reluctant, to mind
sedia to be ready, to be prepared
kemukakan to put forward
sendirian alone, on one's own,
private
cadangan proposition

berhad limited, limited liability
memasarkan to market
cawangan branch
berpengalaman experienced, to have
experience
wakil agent, representative
ketetapan decision, resolution
kongsi partner
perkongasian partnership
tawaran offer

Lesson 47 Part One

Doctor and Dentist

If you have a toothache, go to the clinic and see a dentist. He will examine your teeth. If he finds that it is not too painful, he will stop the pain. If the pain is very serious, he will pull your tooth out. If you are not feeling well you should go and see a doctor. But if you are so ill that you cannot walk, you can call the doctor to your house. He will inquire about your illness. Then he will check your pulse, look at your tongue and examine you generally. After that he will state your illness and give you some prescriptions. At the clinic you must give the prescriptions to the nurse. At a clinic like this, you can buy all sorts of medicines such as liniment, tonics, aspirins, pills and ointment. Baby foods, bandages, plaster and hot water bottles can also be obtained from these clinics. If someone has met with a road accident, we can telephone the hospital and ask for help. An ambulance will come immediately to the scene of the accident. The ambulance nurse will examine the injured person. After being given first aid, the victim will be rushed to the hospital. Doctors at the hospital will carry out further examinations and the injured person will be given proper treatment.

Pelajaran empatpuluh tujuh (47)

Bahagian pertama

Doktor dan doktor gigi

doktor doctor
gigi tooth
doktor gigi dentist
sakit pain, illness, to be ill
sakit gigi toothache
memberhentikan to stop
dicabutnya pulled out, extracted
panggil to call
penyakit sickness, illness
denyutan pulsation
denyutan nadi pulse
lidah tongue
keseluruhannya all over, entirety
menyatakan to state
jururawat nurse
ubat sapu liniment
minyak ubat ointment
balut to wrap round, to bandage

luka wound, a cut
kain balut luka bandages
penampal material used for patching
up
kain penampal luka plaster
panas hot
pertolongan help, aid, assistance
kemalangan accident
ambulan ambulance
cedera to be hurt, to be wounded,
to have suffered injury
rawatan treatment
kecemasan emergency
kejar to run after
dikejarkan rushed
menjalankan to carry out
lanjut further
penuh full

Lesson 47 Part Two

Seeing a Doctor

Encik Ahmad, what's the matter with you? Are you ill?

Yes, doctor. I have a feeling I'm suffering from all sorts of illnesses: lack of sleep, headache, backache, constipation and stomach ache. I feel even worse because I've got a cold and a sore throat and am constantly sneezing and coughing. Apart from that, yesterday I met with a road accident: I hurt the right side of my chest, as well as my foot and my knee, and I almost broke my neck. If I walk some distance, I find it difficult to breathe. Frankly, doctor, I feel as if I'm dead already.

I'm very sorry to hear that. But I hope things are not as bad as you imagine. Let me examine you. Your heart, mouth, chest and lungs are all right; there's nothing to worry about. Now try and breathe in slowly through the nose. I don't think there's anything wrong with you. But you do appear to be a little bit thin and if you are not careful in taking care of yourself, I'm afraid you may become weak and may have to be treated at the hospital. My advice to you is not to worry. Take a long rest and eat at proper times. Eat plenty of vegetables and fruit, and eat less meat. Keep

away from alcohol and do not smoke, at least for the time being. Drink two or three tablespoonsful of tonic every day. If you do all this, I'm sure that you'll recover in two or three months.

Thank you, doctor.

Pelajaran empatpuluh tujuh (47)

Bahagian kedua

Berjumpa doktor

jumpa to meet, to find, to come across	buruk ugly, unsightly, to look old and soiled
berjumpa to see	seburuk as bad as
jadi to become, to come into being, to come into existence	jantung heart
terjadi to happen	mulut mouth
idap to bear to suffer	paru-paru lungs
mengidap to be suffering	khuatir to be anxious, to be worried
sembelit constipation	dikhuatirkan to be worried about
selsema colds	tarik to pull, to breathe in, to inhale
serak hoarseness, sore throat	hidung nose
bersin sneeze	kurus thin, slim
batuk cough, to cough	lemah weak
malang to be unfortunate, to be unlucky	rawat to be given medical attention
dada chest	dirawat to be treated
tengkuk back of neck	nasihat advice
nyaris almost, very nearly	susah difficult, hard
patah to break	menyusahkan fikiran to worry
nafas breath	daging meat
bernafas to breathe	keras hard
mati to die	minuman keras alcohol
	sembuh to recover, to get well

Lesson 48 Part One

Radio and Television

Of all the things ever invented by man, radio and television are the most wonderful devices. By these means of communication you can talk to people in other countries. While resting at home, you can hear music or speeches transmitted from places thousands of miles away. Almost every night I listen to the radio or watch television. My radio uses outdoor aerials. The reception is very good. It has medium, long and short waves. To switch it on, all I do is turn the knob or press a button. I use my radio

to learn a foreign language. I find this extremely useful as a supplement to my Linguaphone course. For Bahasa Malaysia lessons I tune in to a Malaysian radio station, for French to a French radio station, for Dutch to a Dutch radio station, for German to a German radio station, for Spanish to a Spanish radio station, for Russian to a Russian radio station, for Italian to an Italian radio station and for English to London or local radio stations. Even more wonderful than radio is television; it not only makes it possible for us to hear speeches, plays or concerts, but it also makes it possible for us to see what is actually happening. Nobody knows what other things will be invented in the future. It is possible that there may be clever scientists who might be able to invent a device which can read other people's thoughts. If this happens, perhaps there are people who may not feel too comfortable.

Pelajaran empatpuluh lapan (48)

Bahagian pertama

Radio dan talivisyen

talivisyen television	pusing to turn
cipta to invent	memusing to turn on something, to rotate
dicipta to be invented	putar to turn
manusia human being, man	alat pemutar knob
ajaib wonderful	tekan to press down
hubung to connect, to join up	butang button
perhubungan communication	mempelajari to study, to learn
syarahan speech, talk	faedah benefit, profit, interest
pancar to beam, to spread	tambah to add
dipancarkan beamed, broadcast	tambahan addition, supplement
tonton to watch, to see	membolehkan to enable
penerimaan reception	sandiwara play, concert
suara voice	bijak clever, brilliant, wise
memainkan to play something	

Lesson 48 Part Two

Television Programmes

How's your television?

It seems all right, although recently it's been a bit difficult to receive transmissions from distant stations.

Yes, I find my television suffers interference too. I think maybe it's the weather.

My television set is an older model compared with yours. However, did you watch the opera programme the night before last? Yes, I did. Personally, I don't care very much for opera, but it's my wife's favourite programme. When she's watching it, I don't ask my wife to change to some other programme. I'm very lucky because sometimes there are translations of the words given in Bahasa Malaysia. You know, I'm not yet very proficient in that language. Which programmes do you like best? I like plays and I find the dialogues most interesting. I also like to follow sports programmes. Last Saturday I got very excited when I listened to the commentary on the football match. I'm sure you heard the programme in Bahasa Malaysia, didn't you? Yes, I did. This has become ear training for me. If there is a commentator who uses words which are not too familiar, the sentences following will give me some clue as to the meaning. You're very lucky indeed to be able to speak Bahasa Malaysia. I should like to acquire a good command of the language. That depends on our own efforts. Those who are prepared to take some trouble will be able to gain a good command of the language. Where there's a will there's a way.

Pelajaran empatpuluh lapan (48)

Bahagian kedua

Rancangan siaran talivisyen

siaran broadcast
saluran channel
ganggu to disturb
gangguan disturbance
banding to compare
berbanding compared with
bangsawan Malay stage play
rupa look, appearance
gemar to like, to be fond of
kegemaran favourite
terjemah to translate
terjemahan translation
senikata dialogue, wordings
mahir to be experienced, to be expert at
percakapan speech, dialogue
terpegun to be motionless as a result of a shock

ulasan commentary
latih to train
latihan training
telinga ear
bicara trial, to talk
pembicara speaker
ayat sentence
ikut to follow
berikut following
erti meaning
kuasa power
menguasai to gain command of
gantung to hang
bergantung to depend on
barangsiapa whoever
hadap front part
kemahuan wish, will

Lesson 49 Part One Places of Entertainment

In Kuala Lumpur there are a number of theatres in which plays are staged. The best seats are in the front, the medium-priced ones are in the middle and the cheapest seats are at the back. Shows which are of high standard are performed in these theatres. You can hear music from well-known orchestras. Shows like these are very well patronised by the public particularly by amateur actors, dancers, and musicians. There are many cinemas in Malaysia and there are several cinemas which show popular films for several weeks. Malay, Indonesian, Tamil, Hindi, Chinese and Western films are very popular. There are also many night clubs. The patrons of these clubs can enjoy food and drink while listening to soothing music and songs from popular bands. When you are in Kuala Lumpur you can choose the place of entertainment that you prefer. There are several public parks, especially in newly developed areas. People can sit on benches in pleasant spots surrounded by trees with thick foliage and flowering shrubs. You are sure to enjoy strolling in such a place. The fresh air is good for the health.

Pelajaran empatpuluh sembilan (49)

Bahagian pertama

Tempat-tempat hiburan

panggung stage, theatre
pentas stage
pementasan the staging of
pertunjukan show
mutu quality
bermutu having quality
masyhur famous
sambut to catch something in one's arms, to receive
sambutan reception
minat interest
peminat one interested in, fan
senilakun acting
senitari dancing

tayang to hold up for show
menayangkan to show, to screen
disukai ramai to be popular
mengunjungi to visit
pengunjung frequenter, client, regular customer
nyanyian singing
kugiran pop group, band
taman orangramai public park
seronok nice, pleasurable
keliling around
di kelilingi surrounded
segar fresh, lively

Lesson 49 Part Two At the Theatre

Have you got any seats left for tomorrow night's show?
Which show, sir?
The eight o'clock show. If you have, please give me two first class tickets.
We have, sir, seats in the middle row.
Oh, good, thank you. Here's the money for two tickets.
The tickets cost four dollars, sir.
Can you please show us where our seats are?
In the front row, on the right, sir.
Thank you.
Your seats are here.
Is there a place selling drinks here?
Downstairs, not far from here, sir. If you want to have a drink you'd better go now because this show has no interval.
In that case we'd better go now. What do you think of the performance?
Very good indeed... I've not had a good laugh for a long time, but when those comedians performed just now, I really laughed a lot and was very happy.
The acting was good and the story was of a high standard.
The scenery and the background music fit in very well with the plot.
From beginning to end no faults could be discerned.
The director and the actors and actresses should be complimented.

Pelajaran empatpuluh sembilan (49)

Bahagian kedua

Di panggung wayang

tempat duduk seat
baris line
barisan row
minuman drink, refreshment
masa rehat interval, intermission
pendapat opinion, view
lakunan acting

ketawa to laugh
pandang to look
pemandangan scenery, scene
latar belakang background
pelakun actor, actress
puji praise
pujian praise

Lesson 50 The Development of Malay Literature

Studying Malay literature in depth will help us to appreciate the beauty of this language. Apart from that we shall be able to get a wider understanding of the social conditions of the Malay people. Learning Bahasa Malaysia can be done in various ways. Learning from simple text books for those who are beginning to learn, and reading books which have been written by language experts and well-known writers for those who want to learn the language in greater depth. 'Sajak', 'pantun', 'gurindam' and 'seloka' are the various types of poetry which can reveal the beauty of Bahasa Malaysia. If you are a lover of poetry, you will be able to enjoy it by reading verses composed by well-known national poets. Such poetry books can be bought in the bookshops. Poems are not only learnt by school children, but they have also become favourites for recitation either by children at school or by adults. Sajak reciting competitions are often held in schools and at public functions. In Bahasa Malaysia there are to be found words which came originally from foreign languages such as Arabic, Chinese, Sanskrit, Portuguese and other European languages, but the use of these words does not spoil it. The English language and especially the Indonesian language continue to contribute to the present development of Bahasa Malaysia. In this way the language becomes enriched and develops to meet the needs of a modern society.

Pelajaran limapuluh (50)

Perkembangan kesusasteraan Melayu

kembang to open up, to bloom, to develop
perkembangan development
sastra art
kesusasteraan literature
dalam deep
mendalam in depth
mendalami to study in depth
harga price
menghargai to value, to appreciate
indah beautiful
keindahan beauty
pengertian understanding, interpretation, meaning
masyarakat society
karang coral; to compose

dikarang composed by, written by
pengarang writer, author
muka face
terkemuka famous, well-known, leading
pantun Malay quatrain
gurindam a type of poetry
seloka a type of poetry
puisi poetry
gambar picture, photograph
menggambarkan to show, to reflect, to give a picture of
cinta love
pencinta lover
sajak verse
tanahair homeland

baca	to read, to recite	asal	origin
membaca sajak	to recite verses	berasal	to have origin, to be of the origin
orang dewasa	adult	Tionghoa	Chinese
adu	to pit one against another, to complain, to compete	penggunaan	the use of
peraduan	competition, contest	rosak	to be damaged, spoilt
kerap	often, frequent	merosakkan	to cause damage to
jumpa	to meet, to find	sumbangan	contribution
perjumpaan	meeting, gathering	perlu	important, necessary
kata	to say, to speak	keperluan	need
perkataan	word		

Explanatory Notes

bertutur to speak, to utter
 bertuturlah to utter, to speak
 orang dewasa adult
 ada to be, to exist, to have, to
 complete, to complete
 perakuan completion, content
 kerap often, frequent
 jumpa to meet, to find
 mempunyai having, having
 kata to say, to speak
 perakuan word

asal origin
 berasal to have origin, to be of the
 origin
 Tionghoa Chinese
 penggunaan the use of
 rusak to be damaged, spoil
 merosakkan to cause damage to
 sambutan contribution
 perlu important, necessary
 keperluan need

Explanatory Notes

Basic Rules of Grammar

As Bahasa Malaysia, both in pronunciation and in Grammar, varies to some extent from area to area, these Explanatory Notes will not be standard for all areas. The spoken language was, and still is in many places, brief and to the point without employment of non-essential words. Of recent years the language has become more ornate due to the ever increasing number of educated Malaysians, a widespread usage of mass media, particularly television, and of course readily available printed materials.

CONTENTS

Bahasa Malaysia is still undergoing change in wordings, words and even style and structure from cultural contacts with the outside world. As in the English language, the origin of some words can be traced to Malaysia's historical past, early Eastern influence through Chinese or Hindu traders, from Arab traders who brought Islam to Malaysia, then later influences brought by the Portuguese, Dutch and British from the West. To remain a living language this change is essential. It at times a little confusing.

Here are a few basic grammatical rules which the student may find it useful to refer to as an introduction to the right point of

Basic Rules of Grammar

1. The Noun

Explanatory Notes (Introduction – Lesson 50)

Index

2. The Adjective

The adjective follows the noun in Bahasa Malaysia and does not change its form to agree with the noun it modifies in number, gender or case e.g.
 buku besar a big book or big books

3. The Demonstrative Adjectives 'itu' and 'ini'

buku itu that book or those books
 buku ini this book or these books
 Used with another adjective, ad or an appear in this order:
 buku besar itu that big book or those big books
 buku besar ini this big book or these big books

4. The Copula

The copula or natural connection is usually not expressed in Bahasa Malaysia i.e. between subject and complement e.g.
 ini buku That is a book or These are books
 itu buku That is a book or Those are books
 There is a slight pause between the two words itu and buku where the English word 'is' would come in conversation.
 It is essential therefore to recognise the difference between the following:

Basic Rules of Grammar

As Bahasa Malaysia, both in pronunciation and in Grammar, varies to some extent from area to area, these Explanatory Notes will not be standard for all areas. The spoken language was, and still is in many places, brief and to the point without employment of non essential words. Of recent years the language has become more ornate due to: use by an ever increasing number of educated Malaysians, a widespread usage of news media, particularly radio and television, and of course readily available printed materials.

Bahasa Malaysia is still undergoing change absorbing words and even style and structure from cultural contacts with the outside world. As in the English language, the origin of some words can be traced to Malaysia's historical past: early Eastern influences through Chinese or Hindu traders; from Arab traders who brought Islam to Malaysia; then later influences brought by the Portuguese, Dutch and British from the West. To remain a living language this change is essential, if at times a little confusing.

Here are a dozen useful basic grammatical rules to which the student may find it useful to refer, or use as an introduction to the finer points of grammar which occur later with the conversations.

1 The Noun

The Bahasa Malaysia noun does not change its form from the singular to the plural e.g.

buku: *book, a book, books*

2 The Adjective

The adjective follows the noun in Bahasa Malaysia and does not change its form to agree with the noun it follows in number, gender or case e.g.

buku besar: *a big book or big books*

3 The Demonstrative Adjectives 'itu' and 'ini'

buku itu: *that book or those books*

buku ini: *this book or these books*

Used with another adjective **ini** or **itu** appear in this order:-

buku besar itu: *that big book or those big books*

buku besar ini: *this big book or these big books*

4 The Copula

The copula in natural conversation is usually not expressed in Bahasa Malaysia i.e. between subject and complement e.g.

Itu buku: *That is a book or Those are books.*

Ini buku: *This is a book or These are books.*

There is a slight pause between the two words **itu** and **buku** where the English word *is* would come in conversation.

It is essential therefore to recognize the difference between the following:-

buku itu: *that book or those books*

itu buku: *that is a book or those are books*

buku ini: *this book or these books*

ini buku: *this is a book or these are books*

buku besar itu: *that big book or those big books*

itu buku besar: *that is a big book or those are big books*

buku besar ini: *this big book or these big books*

ini buku besar: *this is a big book or these are big books*

buku itu besar: *that book is big or those books are big*

buku ini besar: *this book is big or these books are big*

BUT in modern Bahasa Malaysia especially in the written form, and perhaps because of English structural influence, the words *ialah* or *adalah* are used to translate the copula.

We shall see this in the notes for the following conversation lessons.

5 The Article

As there is no article such as *a* or *the* in Bahasa Malaysia the demonstrative adjectives *ini*: *this* and *itu*: *that* are used to indicate a definite object e.g.

buku ini: *this book or these books* (if not referred to before)

OR

the book here (referred to before)

the books here (referred to before)

buku itu means *that book or these books* (if not referred to before)

OR

the book there (referred to before)

the books there (referred to before)

6 The Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns are unchanged for case grammatically, but cause considerable difficulty to students learning Bahasa Malaysia as there are far more personal pronouns to recognize than in the English language. The reason for this is – and here we may be treading on sensitive ground – a form of class distinction, or degree of politeness, is employed in the selection of the correct personal pronoun.

As this correct selection is difficult, Malays find the easiest solution is to opt out of using personal pronouns wherever possible e.g.

Pergi? *Are you going?*

Pergi. *Yes I am going.*

The question is asked by an inflection in the voice as in asking a question in English and the answer is given in a flat tone.

However, it is impossible to keep this up indefinitely so here are one or two of the 'safe' pronouns to use.

I: *saya*

you: (i) if you know the person's name, use his/her name.

(ii) if you don't know his/her name use:

encik: *Mr* to a man

cik: *Miss* to a girl

puan: *Mrs* to a married lady

such words as *haji*, *datuk* or *tuanku* if the person has a title.

(iii) *anda* – a comparatively modern Bahasa Malaysia word which may be used much the same way as *you* is used in English.

he/she/it/they: *dia* in speech (*ia* in written form)

they: *mereka* in speech or in written form (this avoids any confusion between *he* or *they* if *dia* is used)

Possessive Pronouns (and Possession)

(i) Possession is shown simply by placing the pronoun after the noun.

e.g.

buku saya: *my book*

buku encik: *your book* (when addressing a man)

buku cik: *your book* (" " " young lady)

buku puan: *your book* (" " " married woman)

buku mereka: *their book*

BUT in the possessive form *dia* (or *ia*) becomes *nya* e.g.

bukunya: *his/her/its/their book* (not *buku dia*)

(ii) Possessive pronouns standing by themselves are formed by adding *punya* to the Bahasa Malaysia pronoun e.g. in answer to the question *whose is this?* Answer:

Saya *punya*: *mine*

Dia *punya*: *his/hers/its/theirs*

Encik *punya*: *yours*

8 The Verb

(i) The root word and affixes

Verbs do not change to indicate mood, tense, voice, number or person. Verbs appear either in their simple root form or are formed from other parts of speech by adding prefixes or suffixes. In many instances both suffixes and prefixes are added. By knowing the effect of a prefix or suffix on a word it is often possible to work out the meanings of unknown words from an initial identification of the root e.g.

(rootword) *ajar*: *to teach*

mengajar: *to teach* (throwing emphasis on the subject of the verb)

belajar: *to learn* (the prefix *bel*, but usually *ber*, indicates the reflexive)

pelajar: a student (the *pe(l)* prefix usually indicates an agent or instrument)

ajarliah: *teach!* (the *lah* suffix here gives emphasis)

pelajaran: a lesson (the *pe(l)* prefix combines with the suffix *an* to form a noun.)

(ii) The verb and tense

The tense of a simple verb in root form cannot be determined so that expressions of time or auxiliary verbs are used to form different tenses if the tense is not obvious from the context of a sentence or conversation.

saya belajar: *I learn*

sekarang saya belajar: *now I learn*

semalam saya belajar: *yesterday I learned*

besok saya belajar: *tomorrow I shall learn*

saya tengah belajar: *I am in the middle of learning*

saya ada belajar: *I am learning (continuous action)*

saya sudah belajar: *I have finished learning*

saya sudah habis belajar: *I have quite finished learning*

saya nanti belajar: *I shall learn*

(iii) The passive voice

The passive voice can be formed by adding the prefix *di* to the verb in its root form e.g.

buku dibuka: *the book is opened.*

buku dibuka saya: *the book is opened by me.*

OR buku dibuka oleh saya

Here *buka* means *to open* and *oleh* means *by*.

9 The Adverb

The Bahasa Malaysia adverb usually has a similar place in a sentence to that of an adverb used in an English sentence. There is no adverbial ending to Bahasa Malaysian words similar to the English *ly* and the adverb is usually an adjective or noun combined or duplicated with another word e.g. *baik*: *good* is made into an adverb meaning *well* or *carefully* by repetition in the form of *baik-baik*.

10 The Order of Words

(i) The order of words in Bahasa Malaysia corresponds much in the same way to that of an English sentence e.g.

saya baca buku (itu).

I read (that) book.

subject verb object

(ii) Emphasis or balance in Bahasa Malaysia may cause the pattern to be changed. An example of using emphasis with the above sentence could be:

buku itu saya baca.

That was the book I read.

object subject verb

iii) Similarly when *kah* is used to indicate a question it can be added to the word which the speaker intends to emphasise, i.e. *Diakah pergi?* *Has he gone?* *Dia pergikah?* *Has he gone?*

(iv) An adverb of time usually separates a subject from its verb e.g.

Dia belum sampai. He has not arrived yet.

Subject – adverb – verb

He – not yet – arrives.

11 Numbers

Malaysians use classifiers when enumerating people, animals, birds, plants and objects etc. when in English classifiers are only used in rare instances e.g.

dua buah buku: *two books (lit.: two fruits books)*

dua ekor ikan: *two fish (lit.: two tails fish)*

12 The Negative

Tidak is the word for *no* or *not* and this is abbreviated to *ta'* or *tak* in conversation, and sometimes in writing, before verbs and adjectives. It is a simple denial to a statement or sentence.

Tidak ada: There is not/There are not

tak ada

ta' ada

tidak

Dia tak mahu buku ini. He does not want this book.

Bukan can be translated as *no indeed* and qualifies the verb it precedes.

It is an emphatic negative which implies the opposite.

Buku ini besar? Bukan besar, kecil. Is this book big? No, it's small.

Bukan baik, dia jahat. He isn't good, he's wicked.

PENDAHULUAN

Mari kita bercakap Bahasa Malaysia

Bahagian satu

13 Pendahuluan: Introduction

14 Bahagian satu: Part one

15 Mari kita

Mari kita bercakap Bahasa Malaysia: *Let us speak Bahasa Malaysia*

- a. (i) **Mari** kita means *let us*. (In the spoken language **mari** may also mean *come here*.)

Mari is used as an introductory word to make suggestions which include the speaker.

- (ii) **Kita** means *we, us*. (The synonym for **kita** is **kami** but, **kita** includes the person addressed; **kami** does not.)

- b. **Bercakap** means *to speak*. **Bercakap** is derived from **cakap**, which is the root part of the verb. **Ber** is a prefix tacked on in front of the root word. Prefixes and suffixes play important parts in Bahasa Malaysia, as they can alter the meaning and function of a word. (See note 8.)

16 Selamat and forms of address

Selamat pagi tuan: *Good morning sir*.

During colonial days, the word **tuan** was used when a European was addressed (and **mem** for a European lady). Today it is the equivalent of *sir* or *mister* and more often reserved for professional people and people of status. (At public gatherings the plural, **tuan-tuan** refers to *gentlemen*.) A lady may be addressed as **puan** for *madam* e.g. **Puan Aisyah**. **Encik** or **Cik** is a polite form of address to a Malay man or woman respectively. It is used as a honorific TITLE only before the name of a man, e.g. **Encik Ahmad bin Talib** (*Mr Ahmad bin Talib*) as when the name appears on an envelope.

Cik is a short form of **encik** and this shortened form may be used as a honorific title only before the name of a woman, e.g. **Cik Dah**: *Mrs./Miss Dah*.

Encik is normally used in formal situations between individuals.

It is polite to use just this address (without the name) when talking to a stranger and it is the equivalent of *you* in English e.g. **Encik, boleh saya bertanya?** *Sir, can I make an enquiry?* – *Can I ask you a question?*

Other greetings are:-

- (i) **Selamat tengah hari**. *Good afternoon*.

- (ii) **Selamat petang**. *Good evening*.

- (iii) **Selamat malam**. *Good night*.

Devout Muslims will always greet one another, irrespective of the hour of the day, with the traditional Arabic greeting: **Assalamu Alaikum**: *Peace be upon you*. The reply will be: **Waalaikum salam** which means *And peace be upon you, too*.

The word **selamat** which literally means *safe*, is used for expressing good wishes e.g.

- (a) **Selamat belayar**. *Bon voyage* or *safe journey*.
(b) **Selamat tinggal**. (said by the guest) *Good-bye*.
(c) **Selamat harijadi**. *Happy birthday*.
(d) **Selamat pengantin baru**. *Congratulations to the newly wed*.
(e) **Selamat datang**. *Welcome*.
(f) **Selamat maju jaya**. *Wishing you success*.
(g) **Selamat Tahun Baru**. *Happy New Year*.
(h) **Sampai berjumpa lagi**. *Till we meet again*.

17 Sila dengar

Sila means *please* and **dengar** means *to hear*, so **sila dengar** means *please listen*.

18 Saya

Saya is the first person singular pronoun meaning *I*, (see note 6).

19 Seorang

Seorang is made up of two parts: **se** which is short for **satu** meaning *one* and **orang** meaning *a man* or *person*. **Orang** is the classifier for people and classifiers must be used with numbers and nouns (see note 11).

Saya seorang guru. *I (am) a (certain) teacher*. (one person)

20 Tuan

We have a further illustration of the use of the classifier **orang** in the following context:

Tuan seorang pelajar. *You are a (certain) student*. (one person)

Although **Tuan** means *Mr* or *Sir*, it is used here to mean *you* as Malays try to avoid the use of the personal pronoun *you*, by omitting it altogether, or substituting *Sir*, *Mr*, *Mrs*, *Miss* or the person's rank e.g. *doctor* (see note 6).

Pelajar comes from the root word **ajar**: *to teach*.

21 Orang Melayu

- (a) **Saya orang Melayu**. *I am a (person) Malay*.

- (b) **Orang Melayu bercakap Bahasa Malaysia**. *Malays speak the National language*.

Notice that in (a) above, **orang Melayu** is singular but in (b) **orang Melayu** is plural i.e. there is no change to the noun or adjective for the plural.

Also in (a) above the copula *am* is not translated into Bahasa Malaysia.

22 Bukan

Tuan bukan orang Melayu. *You aren't a Malay*.

The use of **bukan** here indicates the contrary (i.e. *you are a European*). See note 12.

- 23 **Bahasa Malaysia**
Bahasa means *language* and with **Malaysia** used as an adjective (which follows the noun) forms *Malaysian language* or *National language*. Bahasa Inggeris means *English (language)*.
- 24 **The prefix 'ber'**
Orang Melayu bercakap Bahasa Malaysia.
In this sentence **ber** is the prefix for the verb **cakap**. The prefix **ber**, as here, usually indicates an intransitive or reciprocative function. (See note 8(i).) e.g.
(a) Dia berlari di padang. *He runs in the field.*
(b) Dia bernyanyi seorang diri. *He/she sings alone.*
Other usages of **ber** will appear later.
- 25 **Sebuah**
Ini sebuah petinyanyi. *This is a record player.* (**Peti**: box and **nyanyi**: to sing.)
Buah is the numeral coefficient applicable to **petinyanyi**. It precedes the noun it qualifies. Generally the numerical coefficient **buah** is used for large objects with irregular shapes, e.g. **kapal**: ship, **motokar**: car, **rumah**: house, **kapalterbang**: aeroplane, **kerusi**: chair, **almari**: cupboard, **buku**: book, **sungai**: river, and here:- **petinyanyi**: record player, and **piringhitam**: record.
- 26 **Petinyanyi**
Petinyanyi: a singing box, which aptly describes a record player.
- 27 **Piringhitam**
Piringhitam: a black plate; it attempts to describe a record, but a current word in use is **rekod** (from the English word).
- 28 **Ini and Itu**
Ini sebuah meja. *This is a table.* **Ini** is used as a demonstrative pronoun referring to something near. When referring to an object at a distance, the demonstrative pronoun **itu**, which means *that*, is used, e.g.
Itu sebuah meja. *That is a table.* (See notes 2, 3 and 4.)
Ini and **itu** may be used as demonstrative adjectives too, e.g.
Meja bulat ini *This round table*
Rumah besar itu *That big house*
When thus used, **ini** or **itu** follows the noun or any other adjective that follows the noun.
The adjectives **ini** and **itu** (particularly **itu**) are frequently used as the equivalent of the English definite article *the*. There is the implication that the object to which the noun refers has just been under discussion, or is already familiar to the listener or (as in the last example below) is well known to everybody. (See also note 5.) e.g.
(a) Di atas meja ada buku. Buku itu besar.
On the table is a book. The book is big.
(b) Baju merah itu *The red shirt*
(c) Ikan ini dimakan oleh kucing. *The fish was eaten by a cat.*

- 29 **Di used as a preposition and to indicate passive voice**
Piringhitam ada di atas petinyanyi. *The record is on the record player.*
Di, a preposition of place, which may mean *at*, *on* or *in*, is usually placed before a noun, but is not joined to it.
Di is also used to transform a sentence into the passive voice but appears as a prefix to the verb. Study the following examples:
(a) Saya tinggal di Singapura (**di** is a place preposition). *I live in Singapore.*
(b) Bola itu disepak oleh Ahmad (a passive sentence using the passive verb **disepak** from the active verb **sepak**). *The ball was kicked by Ahmad.*
- 30 **Sedang, sudah and pernah**
Tuan sedang melihat buku. *You are looking at the book.* (**Buku** here could be followed by **itu** as the definite article as it was referred to in the previous sentence).
The verb **melihat** alone, like other unqualified Bahasa Malaysia verbs, could be in any tense. The word **sedang** is placed before it to indicate a continuing action. Another word which could be used for this purpose is **masih**.
Ahmad masih suka pergi ke rumah Ani. *Ahmad still likes to go to Ani's house.*
The words **telah** or **sudah** indicate the completion of an action. The short form for **sudah** is **dah** which is used mainly in the spoken language, e.g.
Dia telah pergi or Dia sudah pergi. *He has gone.*
An action which has already been completed is indicated by **pernah** or **sudah**.
(a) Saya pernah pergi ke Kuala Lumpur. *I have been to Kuala Lumpur.*
(b) Rumah ini sudah terbina masa Jepun memerintah. *This house had been built during the Japanese occupation (of Malaysia).*
Akan denotes a future action.
There is no category of tense in Bahasa Malaysia. The words mentioned above denote the various aspects of action. (See also note 8.)
- 31 **Repetition or reduplication of words**
The word **perlahan-lahan** is repeated to indicate slowing down. On the other hand the reduplication of the word **cepat** indicates an increase in speed.
In Bahasa Malaysia REPETITIVE WORDS are used in various forms, but the following notes are provided for reference only. (A student should not try to commit to memory all of these rules as he will learn them gradually through frequent encounter):
(a) Repetitive words which do not use a prefix or suffix are divided into FOUR GROUPS.
(i) Where both words are identical and increase or intensify the meaning of the first word e.g. **orang-orang** (plural of person), **cepat-cepat**: quickly, **mahal-mahal**: expensive and others.
(ii) Both words are identical, but together take on a new meaning.

They cannot stand by themselves, and make sense. Such words include **labi-labi**: *tortoise*, **kunang-kunang**: *fire-flies*, **biri-biri**: *sheep*, etc.

- (iii) Two different words, but the second word is related in sound and meaning to the first word e.g. **sayur-mayur**: *vegetables*, **beras-petas**: *all sorts of rice*, **gerak-geri**: *movements*, **saudara-mara**: *relations*.
- (iv) Two different words, but the first word is related in sound and sense to the second word, e.g. **kelap-kelip**: *twinkling*, **mundar-mandir**: *to and fro*, **lekak-lekuk**: *bumpy ground*, etc.
- (b) Repetitive words using prefixes and suffixes are divided into six groups.
 - (i) The first component takes a prefix e.g. **berkali-kali**: *many times*, **berturut-turut**: *consecutively*, **sepanjang-panjang**: *all along*, **meluap-luap**: *profusely*, etc.
 - (ii) Both components take a prefix e.g. **pengikut-pengikut**: *followers*, **sekali-sekali**: *once in a while*, etc.
 - (iii) Both components have a suffix attached, e.g. **makanan-makanan**: *foodstuff*, **bacaan-bacaan**: *reading*, etc.
 - (iv) Only the second component takes a suffix, e.g. **buah-buahan**: *all sorts of fruits*, **bunga-bunga**: *all parts of flowers*, etc.
 - (v) The first component takes a prefix and the second has a suffix, e.g. **berlari-larian**: *running continuously*, **kemerah-merahan**: *reddish*, etc.
 - (vi) Only the second component takes a prefix and the words denote reciprocal action e.g. **pukul-memukul**: *hitting each other*, **tolong-menolong**: *helping each other*, etc.

Repetitive words can be nouns, verbs, adjectives, adverbs or numerals.

- (a) With NOUNS, the purpose of repetition is:
 - (i) to show quantity or variety, such as **binatang-binatang**: *animals*, **pakaian-pakaian**: *clothes*, **sayur-sayuran**: *a variety of vegetables*.
 - (ii) to show resemblance or likeness in appearance or manners: **kuda-kuda**: *trestles*, **tupai-tupai**: *wooden supports*.
- (b) With VERBS, the purpose is:
 - (i) to show that the action is repetitive: **melompat-lompat**: *jumping*, **berlari-lari**: *running continuously*, etc.
 - (ii) to show an attribute or quality such as: **menyala-nyala**: *burning fiercely*, **bersinar-sinar**: *shining brightly*.
 - (iii) to show that the action is repeated and reciprocal: **bercium-cium**: *kissing each other*, **tuduh-menuduh**: *blaming each other*, etc.
- (c) With ADJECTIVES or ADVERBS the combined words indicate:
 - (i) quantity or variety, e.g.
Jalan raya dalam bandar itu luas-luas. *The roads in the town are wide.*
 - (ii) an emphasis of the quality referred to, e.g.
Buah-buahan itu manis-manis rasanya. *The fruits taste sweet.*

(d) With NUMERALS the combination of words:

- (i) state a numerical order: **satu-satu**: *one by one*, **berpasang-pasang**: *in pairs*.
- (ii) express quantity (or large numbers) such as: **berpuluh-puluh**: *in tens*, **beribu-ribu**: *in thousands*.

PENDAHULUAN

Bahagian dua

32 Greetings

Selamat tengah hari: *Good afternoon* (Literally, *Safe half day*).

Apa khabar: *How are you?* (Literally, *What news?*) This is the most frequently used form of greeting.

Khabar baik, terima kasih: *Very well, thank you*. And this the most frequent form of reply. It literally means: *Good news, thank you*.

33 Tanya

Sekarang sila tuan jawab pertanyaan saya. *Now please (sir/you) answer my questions*.

Pertanyaan – the root word **tanya** means *ask* and becomes a noun by adding the prefix and suffix.

34 Ya

Adakah saya ini seorang guru? *Am I a teacher?*

Ya, tuan ialah seorang guru. *Yes, you are a teacher*.

Note: **ialah** is not necessary, but is now used frequently in modern Malay.

In this context, **ya** is an exclamation (and its synonym is **benar**). In spoken Bahasa Malaysia **ya** means *correct* or *true*. It can be used as a reply e.g. **Ya, Pak Cik**. *Yes, uncle*.

35 Kah, siapa and adakah

The use of **kah** can perhaps be illustrated with simple examples.

Has Mr. X a book? Adakah Encik X sebuah buku?

Has Mr. X a book? Ada Encik X kah sebuah buku?

Has Mr. X a book? Ada Encik X sebuah bukukah?

Kah is an interrogative particle. It is usually attached as a suffix to the word which is emphasised. It may, however, be omitted, as a question can be indicated by the intonation or/and other interrogative words, e.g. **Siapakah guru tuan** or **Siapa guru tuan?** *Who is your teacher?*

Compare with this sentence **Tuan membaca bukukah?** *Are you reading a book?* Here the word **book** is emphasised by the attachment of **kah**.

Tuan orang Melayu? *Are you a Malay?*

This could also translate as: **Adakah tuan seorang Melayu?** (Here **Adakah** **tuan** means *Is it that you are?*)

Siapakah guru, tuankah atau saya? *Who is the teacher, you or I?*

In Bahasa Malaysia it is the normal practice to mention the first person (*I, We*) first before other pronouns or proper nouns, and men precede women e.g. *Ladies and gentlemen* in Bahasa Malaysia becomes **Tuan-tuan dan puan-puan**.

36 Lah

Tuanlah seorang guru. *You are the teacher.*

(a) **Lah** is used as a suffix to emphasise *you* in the above sentence, but can be attached to a noun, pronoun, verb or adjective.

(b) **Lah** is also used in commands and warnings to make the command less peremptory, e.g.

Janganlah marah. *Don't (please) be angry.*

(c) In print **lah** occurs frequently after verbs in their root form, giving the effect of past tense, or completed action, e.g.

(a) **Ia pun matilah.** *He died.*

(b) **Pergilah ia.** *He went.*

37 Boleh

Bolehkah tuan bercakap (dalam) Bahasa Malaysia? *Can you speak (in) Bahasa Malaysia?*

The word **dalam** meaning *in* may be used. Its presence or absence in the sentence does not make any appreciable difference, e.g.

Bolehkah tuan bercakap Bahasa Malaysia? *Can you speak Bahasa Malaysia?*

38 Sedang and tengah

Saya sedang mendengar suara piringhitam. *I am listening to the record.*

The word **sedang** here can be translated as *in the middle of* and so indicating a continuous action: *is doing, was doing, will be doing*. It is perhaps used more in writing than in conversation for the word **tengah** which has the same meaning.

39 The prefix 'me'

The verbal prefix **me** turns the root verb **dengar** (an intransitive verb) above, into a transitive verb, which of course takes a direct object.

You will notice however that, for the sake of euphony, the **me** prefix becomes **men** in front of the initial letter **d** of **dengar** i.e. **dengar** becomes **mendengar**.

This change also takes place with other initial letters of root words e.g.

(a) **me** becomes **mem** where it occurs before **b**, e.g. (**buka**) **membuka** and where it occurs before **p**, but in this instance the **p** is dropped e.g. (**pukul**) **memukul**.

(b) **me** becomes **men** before **c**, **d**, **j** or **t**, but in the last instance the **t** is dropped e.g.

(**cuci**) **mencuci**: *to clean*

(**dengar**) **mendengar**: *to hear*

(**jual**) **menjual**: *to sell*

(**tulis**) **menulis**: *to write* (note that the **t** is dropped.)

(c) **me** becomes **meng** before **g**, **h**, or **k**, but in the last instance the **k** is dropped e.g.

(**gigit**) **menggigit**: *to bite*

(**hantar**) **menghantar**: *to send*

(**kenal**) **mengenal**: *to recognize*

Also **me** becomes **meng** in front of a vowel e.g.

(**ajar**) **mengajar**: *to teach*

(**eja**) **mengeja**: *to spell*

(**ikut**) **mengikut**: *to follow*

(**ukur**) **mengukur**: *to measure*

(d) **me** becomes **meny** before **s** but the **s** is dropped e.g.

(**sapu**) **menyapu**: *to sweep*

(e) For other letters **l**, **m**, **n**, **ny** or **r** the **me** prefix remains unchanged.

When the **me** prefix occurs in the following conversations, this list can be referred to for the identification of the root word, but eventually it will be advisable to learn one example each of the above, so that no difficulty will be experienced with applying the prefix to other root words.

The principal uses of the **me** prefix can be summed up as:

(i) drawing attention to the subject e.g.

Dia yang mendengar. *It was he who heard.*

(ii) as a participle after such words as **pandai** and **suka** e.g.

pandai menyanyi: *clever at singing.*

suka melompat: *likes jumping.*

(iii) to indicate a continued action e.g.

saya duduk membaca buku: *I am sitting reading a book.*

(iv) as a verbal noun after such words as **tempat** e.g.

tempat mencuci kain: *a place for washing clothes.*

The **me** prefix can best be used by a student in conversation by noting its common usage. Some words such as **pergi** do not take the **me** prefix at all. Do not try to remember all the **me** applications at once, but dip into this section when occasion arises.

40 Di mana: 'where'

Di mana tuan duduk? *Where are you sitting?*

Note that this is different from the prefix **di** which is joined to the following verb and indicates the passive e.g. **dibuka**: *is opened*.

The answer to **Di mana** tuan duduk? in this conversation is **Saya duduk di kerusi**. *I am sitting on a chair*. The **di** is a preposition of place and not a prefix and can be translated, according to context as: **at**, **on** or **in**.

41 Yang

Apa yang sedang tuan lihat? *What (is it which) you are looking at?*

Yang can be regarded as the Malay for the English relative pronouns: *who, which, that*. However, it is not always used in identical ways and therefore the student should note the occasions on which he hears or sees the word. Here are one or two examples:

Yang besar saya ta'mahu: *(which are big) The large ones I don't want.*

Yang baik sekali: *The best ones*

Perempuan yang cantik: *The pretty woman* (i.e. identifying one from a group *the pretty one*.)

Yang teramat mulia tuan X: *The honourable Mr X* (in formal address)

42 The prefix 'ter'

Buku itu terbukakah atau tertutup? *Is the book open or closed?*

Here the addition of the prefix **ter** indicates a completed action.

Other uses of the **ter** prefix are seen in these examples:-

terbesar: *exceedingly large*

tiada terlupa: *that cannot be forgotten*

terjatuh: *fell down (accidentally)*

PELAJARAN SATU (1)

Keluarga saya

43 Keluarga

Ini ialah keluarga saya. *This is my family.*

(A synonym for **keluarga** is **kelamin** or **famili**)

Isteri and Suami

My wife

Isteri is a polite word for *wife*. A synonym for **isteri** is **bini**. **Bini** is a word which is used colloquially although the use of this word is considered impolite.

Similarly **suami**, which means *husband*, is preferable to **laki**.

44 Lelaki and anak laki-laki

Anak lelaki saya, anak perempuan saya dan saya *My son, my daughter and I*

Lelaki (or Laki-laki) is used to specify the male sex. Anak lelaki (or laki-laki) means *son*. Translated literally, it means a *male child*. Similarly, anak perempuan means *daughter* or a *female child*. The student must remember that **lelaki** (**laki-laki**) and **perempuan** are used only when referring to human beings. To distinguish the sex of animals the words **jantan** for *male*, and **betina** for *female* are used.

45 Orang anak: 'children'

Kami ada dua orang anak. *We have two children.*

46 Umur

Umurnya duabelas tahun. *He is twelve years of age.* (Literally, *Age his (is) twelve years*).

A synonym for **umur** is **usia**, i.e. *age*. Some common phrases with this word are given below:

dimakan umur: *getting old*

panjang umur: *long life*

pendek umur: *short life*

seumur: *same age*

seumur hidup: *throughout one's life*

separuh umur: *middle age* (literally *half age*)

berumur: *of some age*

47 Nama

Nama anak perempuan saya ialah Fatimah. *My daughter's name is Fatimah.*

In this context **nama** means *name*. (**Nama** also means *noun*, e.g. **Nama** am: *common noun*.)

48 Baru (baharu)

Umurnya baru lapan tahun: *She is only eight years old.*

Literally **baru** means *new*. But in this context, it means *only* or *just*.

Baru is also spelt as **baharu**.

49 Lebih, daripada and dari

Dia empat tahun lebih muda daripada Ahmad. *She is four years younger than Ahmad.*

Where there is a comparison of two things **daripada** means *than*. **Daripada** may also mean *made of*, as in:

Bola ini dibuat daripada getah. *This ball is made of rubber.*

Daripada may also mean *from*, as for example:

Saya dapat buku ini daripada suami saya. *I obtained this book from my husband.*

It may be used as *from* with people (as here) BUT with places the word **dari** is used e.g.

Saya datang dari Kuala Lumpur. *I came from Kuala Lumpur.*

Saya dapat buku ini daripada ibu. *I got this book from mother.*

50 Termuda

Fatimah yang termuda. *Fatimah is the youngest.*

51 Tertua

Saya yang tertua sekali. *I am the eldest.*

The prefix **ter** (attached to an adjective) has a superlative function (as with **termuda** above)

(a) Rumah saya yang terbesar sekali. *My house is the biggest.*

(b) Ini yang terkecil sekali. *This is the smallest.*

52 Sekali

Saya yang tertua sekali. *I am the oldest.*

Sekali here has the meaning of *them all* but the literal meaning is *once* (abbreviation for **satu kali**: *one time*).

53 Yang

Saya yang tertua sekali.

There are many functions of **yang**. At this stage it will suffice to say that **yang** in the above sentence serves to emphasise the pronoun **saya**. It is **saya**: *I* who am the eldest (and not anyone else).

54 Abang

Ahmad abang Fatimah. *Ahmad is the elder brother of Fatimah.*

In this context **abang** is *elder brother*. **Abang** is often used by a Malay woman when she addresses or refers to her husband. **Abang** is also

used as a polite form of address when dealing with elder males or when addressing a stranger.

55 Adik

Fatimah adik perempuan Ahmad. *Fatimah is Ahmad's younger sister.*
Adik can also mean *younger brother*. Adik is widely used in the spoken language to address young persons. It is also used by a husband to address his wife.

Adik-beradik means *brothers and sisters or relatives*.

56 Bapa

Saya ialah bapanya. *I am his father.*
(A synonym for bapa is ayah)

57 Isteri

Isteri saya ialah ibu mereka. *My wife is their mother.*

58 Sangat

Kami sangat kasih pada mereka. *We love both of them very much/We are very fond of them.*

Sangat means *very* and a synonym for it is *amat*. It normally follows the adjective or adverb to which it refers. When it is used with a verb it normally means *very much*. More often *sangat* occurs before an adjective. *Pada* can mean *by, at, in, to, near, on, according to* depending on the context.

59 Tingkap – jendela

Tingkap is *window*. (A synonym for *tingkap* is *jendela*)

60 Keretapi

Keretapi is *train*. It is derived from the words *kereta* and *api* which literally mean *fire vehicle*.

The name was coined when steam locomotives were in use.

Keretapi mainan means *toy train*. Keretapi cepat is *express train*, and keretapi mel is *mail train*.

61 Sambil

Berdiri ... sambil menghisap paip. *Sitting ... (at the same time) smoking a pipe.*

Sambil here indicates one action going on at the same time as another.

PELAJARAN DUA (2)

Soalan dan jawapan

62 Siapa, siapa-siapa, siapapun

Siapa saya? *Who am I?*

Siapa is one of the many interrogative words used to frame questions.

Siapa means *who*. It is used for persons only. It may also mean *whose* and *what* in (ii) below:

(i) Siapa orang laki-laki itu? *Who is that man?*

*(ii) Siapa nama awak? *What is your name?* (Literally: *Who is your name?*)

(iii) Buku siapa itu? *Whose book is that?*

(iv) Buku siapa ini? *Whose book is this?*

(*This is an important example to remember.)

Siapa in reduplicated form or with *pun* can be used as an indefinite pronoun, e.g.

(a) Siapa-siapa yang tidak datang: *Those who do not attend.*

(b) Siapapun boleh buat itu. *Anyone can do that.*

Siapapun with the negative *tidak*: *no* can be used to express *nobody*, e.g.

Siapapun tak ada di rumah. *There was nobody in the house.*

63 Forms of address: Tuan, Encik, Cik, Anda

Tuan ialah Encik Muhammad – Anda ialah Encik Muhammad

You are Mr. Muhammad – You are Encik Muhammad.

Tuan is the equivalent of the English word *sir*. It is a courteous form of addressing people. Here are more details about its usage. It can be used for the following categories of people:

(a) a European man (attributed to Malaysia's colonial past)

(b) a senior officer

(c) gentlemen (in this case it is used in the reduplicated form of *tuan-tuan*)

(d) a *Haji* (a man who has gone on a pilgrimage to Mecca)

(e) a *Sayed* (a name borne by the descendents of the Prophet Muhammad)

(f) a customer or a client (for the sake of politeness).

Encik may be used to address any Malay man. It may also be appropriately used to address an immediate senior officer. The shortened form *cik* is also acceptable, but it is generally used to address a lady. It carries the meaning *you* and *your* when a person is addressed.

Encik hendak ke mana? *Where are you going?*

Encik can also mean *master*.

BUT for all purposes one may eventually use:

Anda – this is a comparatively newly introduced word into the Malay language and is an attempt to have the word accepted nationally to mean *you* no matter which sex or rank of person is addressed.

64 Ialah and adalah

Anda ialah Encik Muhammad. *You are Encik Muhammad.*

Ialah is not exactly the equivalent of the English verbs (*to be*) *are* or *is*, although in translation it may be convenient to regard it as such. Ialah is made up of the personal pronoun *ia* which means *he, she* or *it*, and the suffix *lah*. Generally *ialah* serves to emphasise the importance of the pronoun or noun that precedes it e.g.

(a) Bijih timah ialah eksport utama Malaysia. *Tin is Malaysia's main export.*

(b) Dia ialah guru saya. *He is my teacher.*

Sometimes *adalah* is used instead of *ialah* e.g.

- (a) Dia adalah seorang yang baik. *He is a good person.*
 (b) Mereka adalah rakyat yang taat. *They are loyal citizens.*
 Anda ialah Encik Muhammad. *You are Mr. Muhammad.*
 (Muhammad and Ahmad are common Malay names.)

65 Forms of address: Puan

Saya suami siapa? *Whose husband am I?*

Tuan suami Puan Asmah. *You are Puan Asmah's husband.*

Puan is the equivalent of the English *Madam*. It is a courteous form of address and may be used for three categories of people:

- (a) ladies (in this case it is used in the reduplicated form of *puan-puan*.)
 (b) for a senior lady officer
 (c) a married Malay woman.

66 Anak lelaki

Siapa nama anak lelaki saya? *What is my son's name?*

anak lelaki: *son*

67 Nya

Namanya Ahmad. *His name is Ahmad.*

The possessive pronoun *nya* can also mean *he, him, she, her, his, they, them* and *their*. It must be placed after the noun that it describes e.g.

- (a) Othman bermain dengan adiknya. *Othman is playing with his brother.*
 (b) Fatimah sedang menolong ibunya. *Fatimah is helping her mother.*
Nya also means *its* and *it*, e.g.
 (a) Lembu itu sedang makan bersama anaknya. *The cow and its calf are eating together.*
 (b) Bukan hendak dimakannya ikan itu. *It does not want to eat the fish.*

68 Mempunyai

Tuan mempunyai dua orang anak. *You have two children.* (Mempunyai meaning *to own* or *possess*.)

Notice again the sequence of numeral + coefficient + noun. (Orang is always the numeral coefficient for *people*.)

69 Adakah

Adakah Fatimah anak saya? *Is Fatimah my daughter?*

Here *ada* is taken to be the equivalent of the verb *is*. However *adakah* is not normally used in speech. It may be omitted entirely; the effectiveness of the question then depends entirely on its intonation e.g.

- (a) Fatimah anak sayakah? *Is Fatimah my daughter?*
 (b) Budin anak awakakah? *Is Budin your son?*

Normally *ada* is used as a transitive verb meaning *to have* when it shows possession.

(a) Tuan ada kereta? *Do you have a car?*

(b) Tuan ada sebuah rumah. *You have a house.*

Ada is also often used to mean *there is, there was, there were* or *there are* e.g.

- (a) Ada lima buah kereta di situ. *There are five cars there.*
 (b) Ada sebiji buah epal di atas meja. *There is an apple on the table.*

70 Dia

Ya, dia anak anda. *Yes, she/he is your child.*

The personal pronoun *dia* is always used in the third person. It is of common gender and can be used in place of *she, his, he, they, it, her, him, them, their* and *they*.

71 Berapa

Berapa tahun umurnya? *How old is he?*

The interrogative adverb *berapa* means *how?* It may also mean *how many? how much? or how long?* e.g.

- (a) Berapa harga buah ini? *How much is this fruit?*
 (b) Berapa buah kereta semuanya? *How many cars are there altogether?*
 (c) Berapa lamakah dia di rumah awak? *How long was he at your house?*

72 Apa

Apa dia buat? *What is he doing?*

Apa may be an interrogative pronoun or an interrogative adjective referring to things. It implies *what things* or *what sort of things* e.g.

- (a) Apa itu? *What is that?*
 (b) Apa yang awak buat? *What are you doing?*
 (c) Apa yang awak tanya? *What did you ask?*

73 The prefix 'pe' and suffix 'an'

Dia sedang menulis surat. *He is writing a letter.*

The root word of the verb *menulis* is *tulis*. The prefix *me* stresses the doer *dia: he*.

Notice how the root verb *tulis* may be converted into a noun by the addition of the prefix *pe(n)* or the suffix *an* in the following examples:

- (a) Dia seorang penulis. *He is a writer.*
 (b) Tulisannya digemari ramai. *His writings are very popular.*
 (c) Tulisan Karim cantik. *Karim's handwriting is beautiful.*

74 Berdiri and duduk

Adakah dia berdiri atau duduk? *Is he standing or sitting?*

The verb *duduk* is peculiar; it is rarely used with the prefix *ber*. *Berduduk-duduk* means *to sit around (gossiping)*.

75 The prefix 'ber' and dengan

There are occasions when *ber* may be prefixed to transitive verbs e.g. *berlari*. This is, however, rare. It is done with a special purpose in mind. *Ber* is prefixed, in this case to *lari* to distinguish the meanings of the words *berlari* and *lari* e.g.

- (a) Dia berlari kuat-kuat. *He ran fast.*
 (b) Dia lari dari penjara. *He ran away from prison.*

Dengan apakah Ahmad bermain-main? *With what is Ahmad playing?*

The repetition of the main verb into *bermain-main* indicates a repeti-

tive prolonged action.

Ahmad bermain-main dengan keretapi mainannya. *Ahmad is playing with his toy train.*

The preposition **dengan** here means *with*. It may however be used to mean *by*, *with* or *and*. Note the following examples.

- (a) Dia pergi dengan keretapi. *He went by train.*
- (b) Saya pergi ke Kuala Lumpur dengan kapal terbang. *I went to Kuala Lumpur by plane.*
- (c) Dia dengan saya adik-beradik. *He and I are brothers.*
- (d) Saya pergi ke bandar dengan Karim. *I went to town with Karim.*

76 The family and relatives

Here are the more commonly used terms to describe members of the family and their close relatives:

adik-beradik	brothers and sisters
adik-beradik laki-laki	brothers
adik-beradik perempuan	sisters
adik laki-laki	younger brother
adik perempuan	younger sister
abang	elder brother
kakak	elder sister
ibu, emak	mother
ayah, bapa	father
nenek	grandmother
datuk	grandfather
mak cik	aunt
pak cik	uncle
anak saudara laki-laki	nephew
anak saudara perempuan	niece
sepupu	cousin
abang ipar	brother-in-law
adik ipar	sister-in-law

The words **kakak** and **abang** may be used out of the family context. You may address a man who is slightly older than yourself as **abang**. Similarly you may address a lady who is slightly older as **kakak**. However, since a lady may take offence at the implication that she is older, a better word would be **saudari**, **cik** or **puan**. Originally, the word **saudara** meant a *relation*. Now it means *friend*, *brethren* or *comrade*.

77 Ramai

Berapa ramaikah dari mereka ?
How many of them ?

Ramai and **banyak** mean *many*. **Banyak** is widely used, especially in speech. **Ramai orang** means *many people*, **orang ramai** means *the public*.

78 Sahaja

Seorang sahaja. *Only one person.*
In this context it means *only*.

79 Hisap

Tuan menghisap paip. *You are smoking a pipe.*

The verb **menghisap** comes from the rootword **hisap**, which means *to suck*. The addition of the prefix **me** indicates continuing action. **Menghisap rokok** may be shortened to the verb **merokok** but it would be wrong to shorten **menghisap paip** to **memaip**, not that it is grammatically wrong, but it will not be understood as it has not been in use. A word or two about smoking. In Malay society, Malay women who smoke cigarettes are frowned upon.

80 Ada yang ada yang tidak

Ya, ada yang merokok dan ada yang tidak. *Yes, some do and some don't (smoke).*

PELAJARAN TIGA (3)

Rumah kami

81 Rumah-rumah pangsa

Literally **rumah pangsa** means a house with *compartments*. It is now the equivalent to the English word *flats*.

82 Kawasan luarbandar and bandaraya

Kawasan luarbandar is the *suburbs*. The *town area* is **kawasan bandar**. **Bandaraya** is another new word which means *city*. It is formed by joining the words **bandar**: *town* and **raya**: *large* or *great* i.e. *a large town*.

83 The prefix 'me' and the suffix 'i'

Kami juga mempunyai sebuah rumah di kawasan luarbandar. *We too own a house in the suburbs.* The root word of the verb **mempunyai** is **punya** which means *to own*. The prefix **me(m)** stresses the doer. Notice too that the suffix **i** has been added to the word **punya**. This suffix has two functions:

- (a) it converts nouns or adjectives into transitive verbs.
 - (i) susu: *milk* – menyusui: *to feed the baby with milk by giving the breast; to breast feed.*
 - (ii) baik: *good* – membaiki: *to repair; to correct.*
- (b) it is used as a preposition to show place.
 - (i) menghampiri bandar: *approaching the town.*
 - (ii) melalui kebun: *through the garden.*

84 Numeral coefficients

Here are a few more numeral coefficients:

- (a) **Helai** is used for things which are found in sheets, e.g. **sehelai baju**: *a shirt*; **sehelai kain**: *a sheet of cloth*; **sehelai kertas**: *a sheet of paper*. There are however a few exceptions e.g. **sehelai rambut**: *a strand of hair*, **sehelai bulu**: *a feather*.

- (b) **Kuntum** is used for flowers e.g. **sekuntum bunga mawar**: *a rose*; **sekuntum bunga matahari**: *a sunflower*. However, where the flowers appear along the stalk, the numeral coefficient **kaki** is more appropriate. e.g. **sekaki bunga orkid**: *a stalk of orchids*.
- (c) The numeral coefficient **kaki** is also used for umbrellas e.g. **sekaki payung**: *an umbrella*.
- (d) **Batang** is used for things which are rod-like in appearance, e.g. **sebatang pensil**: *a pencil*; **sebatang tongkat**: *a walking stick*.

85 Rooms in the house

Familiarise yourself with the names of the different parts of the house:

bilik makan	dining room
dewan	hall
bilik dapur	kitchen
bilik tetamu	lounge; sitting room
bilik tidur	bedroom
bilik mandi	bathroom
tandas	toilet

86 Common Malaysian fruits

Here are the names of the commonest fruits and vegetables found in Malaysia and Singapore:

Local Fruits

jambu air mawar	rose apple
jambu batu	guava
duku	duku
rambutan	rambutan
manggis	mangostene
durian	durian
nenas	pineapple
pisang	banana
mangga	mango
nangka	jackfruit
gajus, janggus	cashew

Imported Fruits

epal	apple
limau manis	orange
anggur	grapes

Vegetables

lada, cili, cabai	chilli
timun	cucumber
keledek	sweet potatoes
keladi	yam
terung	brinjal
kacang bender	ladies' fingers
kacang panjang	long beans

ketula
labu kuning

gourd
pumpkin

87 Kebun and taman

The words **taman** and **kebun** may be modified to mean something larger than a garden. Examples:

kebun bunga	a botanical garden
kebun sayur	a vegetable garden
kebun getah	a rubber plantation
taman hiburan	an amusement park
taman haiwan	a zoological park

Tukang kebun is a *gardener*. Sometimes he is also called **wak kebun**. Most foreigners, however, often call their gardeners **kebun** which of course is wrong.

88 Ke – preposition of place

Anak tangga daripada dewan menuju ke tingkat atas. *From the hall there is a staircase which leads to the top floor.*

Ke is a preposition of place and must therefore be followed by a place word e.g.

- (a) **Dia sudah pergi ke Singapura.** *He has gone to Singapore.*
 (b) **Abang saya sudah pergi ke pejabat.** *My elder brother has gone to the office.*
 (c) **Dia datang ke sini semalam.** *He came here yesterday.*
 (d) **Ayah pergi ke situ.** *Dad went there.*
 (e) **Ayah pergi ke sana.** *Dad went over there.*

Ke sana indicates a place which is far away. **Ke situ** indicates a place which is nearby. **Ke sini** is *here*.

89 Di: 'on', 'at' or 'in'

The preposition **di** may mean *on*, *at*, or *in* and it differs from the **di** used for the passive voice and prefixed to a verb.

Study the following examples:

- (a) **Di tingkat atas ada empat buah bilik tidur.** *On the top floor there are four bedrooms.*
 (b) **Di hadapan rumah kami ada sebuah taman kecil.** *In front of our house there is a small garden.*
 (c) **Di belakang rumah ada sebuah taman yang lebih besar.** *At the back of the house there is a bigger garden.*

90 Juga

Di situ ada juga kebun sayur. *There is also a vegetable garden there.*

Juga has many meanings. In the above context it means *also*. Its meaning varies in different contexts.

91 Di mana

Di tepi rumah ini ada sebuah bangsal di mana saya menyimpan motor-kar saya. *At the side of this house there is a garage where I keep my motor-car.*

The preposition **di mana** means *where*.

- 92 'Ber' prefixed to a noun
Taman rumah saya berpagar dan ada dua buah pintu. *The garden of my house is fenced and there are two gates.*
The root word of the verb **berpagar**: *having a fence* is the noun **pagar**: *fence*. Notice that the addition of the prefix **ber** has converted the noun **pagar** into a verb.

- 93 Belakang and hadapan
Ada sebuah pintu belakang dan ada sebuah pintu hadapan. *There is a back gate and there is a front gate.*
Pintu may mean a *door* or a *gate*. To differentiate between the two the word **pintu** may be modified e.g.
pintu: *a door*; **pintu pagar**: *a gate*; **pintu gerbang**: *a main gate*

- 94 The Malay adjective
In Bahasa Malaysia the ADJECTIVE always follows the NOUN e.g. (See Note 2)
pintu belakang: *a back door*; **pintu hadapan**: *a front door*; **pintu besar**: *a big door*; **pintu kecil**: *a small door*; **pintu biru**: *a blue door*.

- 95 Se and satu
Se(buah) means *one*.
The prefix **se** comes from the word **satu**. Therefore the prefix **se** normally introduces the meaning *one*. Besides *one*, it also has other meanings e.g.

- (a) **Ahmad seagama dengan Ali.** *Ahmad and Ali are of the same religion.*

The prefix **se** in the sentence above means *same*.

- (b) **Saya duduk di rumah sepanjang hari.** *I stayed at home all day.*
The prefix **se** above means *throughout*.

- (c) **Setinggi-tinggi yang saya boleh lompat ialah enam kaki.** *The highest I can jump is six feet.*

Here the prefix **se** expresses the SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.

In the above context the adjective **tinggi** is REDUPLICATED.

PELAJARAN EMPAT (4)

Perbualan tentang rumah kami

- 96 Kami, kita and personal pronouns
Sekarang marilah kita berbual tentang rumah kami. *Now let us talk about our house.*

The first person plural pronouns **kita** and **kami** must be carefully distinguished. In English both mean *we* or *us*. However while **kita** includes the listener, **kami** excludes him.

Here is a list of Malay personal pronouns which the student should not memorise, but be able to recognize. Avoid using them wherever possible (See note 6).

Malay personal pronouns	English equivalent	Degree
teman, kawan saya, aku, ku, patik, hamba beta	<i>I, me</i>	first person singular
kita, kami	<i>we, us</i>	first person plural
engkau, awak, kamu, encik, cik, tuan, puan, taukeh, nyonya, saudara, engkau, anda	<i>you</i>	second person singular
dia, ia, dia orang, mereka, beliau	<i>she, him, it, he, they, her, him, them</i>	third person singular and plural

Personal pronouns stand directly for the persons, places or things they represent. In Bahasa Malaysia there is a tendency to attach various shades of meaning to the pronouns of the same category and to grade them according to the degree of politeness a person is thought to merit. In speech Malays use only those pronouns which do not offend people. We should restrict ourselves in their use as they are necessary only for the sake of clarity.

Pronouns in Bahasa Malaysia do not change their form when used either as the subject or the object. This also applies to the possessive case. Only the order of the words is changed, e.g.

I am rich. (as subject)

Saya orang kaya.

Is it me? (an object)

Sayakah?

My pen (as possessive)

Pen saya.

When expressing possession, the pronoun takes its weak form e.g.:

Weak form

buku dia

bukunya

his book

pen engkau

penkau

your pen

baju aku

bajuku

my shirt

beg kamu

begmu

your bag

- 97 Tinggal

Boleh anda beritahu saya di mana kami tinggal? *Can you tell me where we live?*

Tinggal means *live at*. It is synonymous with the words **diam** and **duduk**.

- 98 Atau

Betul. Sekarang beritahu saya, rumah itu besarkah atau kecil? *Right. Now tell me, is it a large house or a small one?*

- 99 Pun and pula

Rumah itu tidak terlalu besar dan tidak pula terlalu kecil. *The house is neither very large nor very small.*

Like the word **juga** it is not possible to give definite English equivalents to the words **pun** and **pula**. They have different meanings according to their contexts. Some of the meanings for **pun** are: *also, even, yet, too, or*. **Pun** is also used for emphasis e.g. *sungguhpun: even if*. The same principle applies to **pula** and some of its meanings are *again, also, moreover, etc.*

Pun

(a) The functions of **pun** are as follows:

- (i) To indicate an action which is sequential to an action, e.g. *Apabila malam, hari pun sejuk. When night falls, it becomes cool.*
- (ii) To affirm or emphasise that which is contradictory, e.g. *Sungguhpun dia tak pandai, tetapi dia baik. Although he is not clever, he is good.*
- (iii) To introduce a new subject, e.g. *Malaysia pun makmur kerana perkembangan ekonominya. Malaysia prospers because of its developing economy.*
- (iv) To indicate similarities in condition or action, e.g. *Dia pun pandai. He too is clever.*
- (v) In written Bahasa Malaysia when **pun** is connected to the subject it is used with **lah** to express an action which is over, e.g. *Ahmad pun matilah. Ahmad died.*

Pula

(b) The functions of **pula** are as follows:

- (i) To denote repetition and comparison, e.g. *Mengapa pula Ahmad tak datang hari ini? Why has Ahmad not come today?*
- (ii) To show a comparison which is contradictory, e.g. *Tadi kita minum susu, ini minum kopi pula. A while ago, we drank milk, now we drink coffee (also).*
- (iii) To express surprise or a protest, e.g. *Kenapa pula bersetuju? Bukankah bayarannya kurang? Why have you agreed? Isn't his payment poor?*

100 The prefix ter

Rumah itu tidak terlalu besar dan tidak pula terlalu kecil. *The house is neither very big nor very small.*

Terlalu means *too, extremely*. **Terlalu besar** means *too big*.

The word **terlampau** may be used in place of **terlalu**.

There are four main functions of the prefix **ter**.

They are:

- (a) To show that an action is accidental, e.g. *Dia termakan racun. He took poison accidentally.*
- (b) To show ABILITY or CAPABILITY. *Saya terangkat meja besar ini. I managed to carry the big table.*
- (c) To show COMPLETION of an action. *Kursus-kursus Linguaphone ini terpakai di sekolah-sekolah. The Linguaphone courses have been used in schools.*
- (d) To express the SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.

Dalam bandar ini Ah Chong yang terpandai sekali. Ah Chong is the cleverest in this town.

101 Numbers 0-10

Biar saya kira, dahulu . . . satu, dua, tiga, empat, lima, enam, tujuh. Let me count first. . . one, two, three, four, five, six, seven.

Here are the numbers 0 to 10 in Bahasa Malaysia. The cardinals will be dealt with separately.

kosong	zero, nought	enam	six
satu	one	tujuh	seven
dua	two	lapan	eight
tiga	three	sembilan	nine
empat	four	sepuluh	ten
lima	five		

102 Termasuk: including

Ya, ada tujuh buah bilik semuanya, termasuk bilik dapur. Yes, altogether there are seven rooms, including the kitchen.

The rootword of the verb **termasuk** is **masuk**: *to enter*.

In this context **termasuk** means **including**.

103 Tidak and tak

Tidak ada. There aren't any.

This could appear as **Tak ada** where **Tak** is an abbreviation of **tidak**. It is often used in the spoken language. Please note the following expressions as well:

- (a) **takkan**: *will not, not possible.*
- (b) **tak apa**: *nothing or I do not mind.*

104 The conjunction dan

bilik tetamu dan bilik dapur: sitting room and kitchen.

The conjunction **dan** is used less in Bahasa Malaysia than in English. It is not used in the following circumstances:

- (a) When expressing a fraction, e.g. $(1\frac{3}{4})$ **satu tiga suku**.
- (b) When expressing a number, e.g. (256) **duaratus limapuluh enam**.
- (c) When expressing commands, e.g. **Pergi buat kerja itu. Go and do the work.**
- (d) With certain pairs of words which go together, e.g. **siang malam: day and night.**

PELAJARAN LIMA (5)

Bilik tetamu kami

105 Lihat, tengok, nampak

Cuba lihat bilik tetamu kami dalam gambar ini. Look at the picture of our sitting room.

Lihat means **look**. People tend to confuse the words **lihat, tengok**

and nampak. *Tengok* and *lihat* mean *to look at* or *to see* with deliberation as in the case of seeing a film. But *nampak* is *see* in the sense of catching sight of by accident or noticing.

e.g. *Saya nampak Ah Chong beli ikan* – *I saw Ah Chong was buying fish*, (you noticed him by chance).

- 106 **Apabila and bila**
apabila: when/whenever; bila: when
- 107 **The adjective besar**
Di sebelah kiri ada sebuah tingkap besar. On the left there is a big window.
 Notice again the position of the adjective *besar*: *big* which follows the noun *tingkap*: *window*.
- 108 **The coefficient biji**
Di atas kerusi panjang ada dua biji bantal sandar. On the sofa there are two pillows.
Biji is usually used as the numeral coefficient for fruits. It is also used for things which are small and round such as eggs and china-ware e.g. *sebiju pinggan: a plate; sebiju tekoh: a tea pot; sebiju telur: an egg.*
- 109 **The coefficient buah**
 Literally *peti talvisyen* means *a television box*. The numeral coefficient for television is *buah* e.g. *sebuah peti talvisyen: a television set.*
- 110 **Sedang and order of adjectives**
Seorang perempuan tua kelihatan sedang duduk di atas sebuah kerusi itu. An old lady is sitting on the chair.
 (a) Notice again the position of the adjective behind the noun i.e. *seorang perempuan tua: an old lady.*
 (b) Notice too the use of the word *sedang* to show the present tense.
- 111 **Jam gerak**
 Literally *jam gerak: an alarm clock* means *a clock which wakes you up.*
- 112 **Lampu berkaki**
Lampu berkaki is a lamp stand. Literally it means a lamp having its own leg to stand on.
 Here the prefix *ber* denotes possession.
- 113 **Berhadapan and bertentang**
Berhadapan dengan peti talvisyen, ada sebuah meja kecil. Di atasnya ada sebuah tempat habuk rokok. In front of the television set there is a small table. On it there is an ash tray.
Berdhadapan could be replaced by *bertentang*. The root word for *bertentang*: *opposite* is *tentang* which means *facing*.
 Literally *habuk rokok* is *cigarette ash*. *Tempat habuk rokok* is therefore *a container for cigarette ash, i.e. ash tray.*

- 114 **The coefficient naskhah**
Naskhah is the numeral coefficient for newspapers or magazines.

- 115 **Pada with expressions of time and waktu with expressions of time**
Pada in the following examples means *at, in* or *on*.

- (a) *pada malam hari: at night*
 (b) *pada siang hari: in daylight*
 (c) **pada hari Sabtu: on Saturday**

Waktu in these examples denotes a period of time.

- (a) *di waktu malam: at night time*
 (b) *di waktu siang cahaya: in daytime*
 (c) *di waktu makan: at eating time*

- 116 **Tergantung and di tengah-tengah**
Sebuah lampu letrik tergantung di tengah-tengah. A lamp hanging (or hung) from the centre.
 The *ter* prefix here denotes a completed action.

PELAJARAN ENAM (6)

Perbualan antara guru dan pelajar

- 117 **The prefix 'pe'**
Perbualan antara guru dan pelajar. Conversation between a teacher and a pupil.
 (a) The root word of the verbal noun **perbualan**: *conversation* is **bual**: *to converse*. Notice that the verb root **bual** has been converted into a noun by the addition of the prefix **pe(r)** and the suffix **an**.
 More examples
 (i) *rasa: feel; perasaan: feeling*
 (ii) *labuh: to anchor; pelabuhan: port*
 Similarly the noun **pelayaran** has its root in the noun **layar**: *to sail*. The addition of **pe** and **an** has changed it into a noun. *Pelayaran* means *voyage*.
 Again the word **pelajaran** means *lesson* with its root word in the verb **ajar**: *to teach*
- 118 **Adakah**
 When *adakah*: *are there* is used to frame a question the answer has to be *ada* or *tidak ada (tak ada)*: *there are not any* e.g.
 (a) *Adakah buku di dalamnya? Are there any books in it?*
 (b) *Ada banyak buku di dalamnya. There are many books in it.*
 (c) *Tidak ada, tidak ada buku di dalamnya. There aren't, there aren't any books in it.*
 OR *Tak ada* the abbreviated form of *tidak ada*.

- 119 **The prefix 'me'**
Mengira is derived from the verb *kira*: *to count*. The prefix *me* is

usually added to simple verbs, e.g.
buka: *open*; **membuka**: *to open*; **kejar**: *chase*; **mengejar**: *to chase*.
 A synonym for **mengira** is **menghitung** from the verb **hitung**: *to count*.

- 120 **Di sebelah**
 di sebelah kiri: *on the left*
 di sebelah kanan: *on the right*
 di sebelah belakang: *at the back*
 di sebelah hadapan: *in front*
- 121 **Absorbing English words into Bahasa Malaysia**
 Notice the influence of English words in Bahasa Malaysia.
- | | |
|-----------------|------------|
| Bahasa Malaysia | English |
| piano | piano |
| radiogram | radiogram |
| radio | radio |
| talvisyen | television |
| talipun | telephone |
| taligram | telegram |
| ambulan | ambulance |
| hospital | hospital |
- 122 **Expressions with nya**
Nampaknya means *it seems that* or *it appears that*.
Rupanya is a synonym for **nampaknya**.
- 123 **Lain**
Lain orang is *another person*. Sometimes it is written **orang lain** which means *other persons; a different person or an outsider*.
duduk di kerusi yang lainnya: *sitting on another chair*
 Examples:
 (a) **Adakah lain orang di situ?** *Is there another person there?*
 (b) **Orang lain jangan masuk campur.** *Outsiders (other persons) do not interfere.*
- 124 **Sesiapa pun**
Tidak ada sesiapa pun yang duduk. *There is no one at all sitting (on the sofa).*
 (a) Here **pun** is the equivalent of the English *also* or *too*. Here it serves to emphasise the fact that no one is sitting (on the sofa).
 (b) **Yang duduk** means *seated, sitting*.
- 125 **Begitu**
Begitu means *in that way or this*. **Saya begitu gembira** therefore means literally: *I in the same manner am happy*.
- 126 **Semua**
Semua orang means *all people or everyone*.
- 127 **Banyak and sedikit**
Banyakkah buku? *Are there many books?*
 The word **banyak** means *many*, but it can also mean *much* and the

antonym for it is **sedikit**. It also precedes the noun and may be classified as an indefinite numeral, e.g. **kebanyakan orang**: *most people or the majority*.

- 128 **Suka, hendak and mahu**
Sukakah anda bilik tetamu kami ini? *Do you like our sitting-room?*
 (i) **Saya dengan Ahmad hendak pergi ke sana.** *Ahmad and I wish to go there.*
 (ii) **Saya mahu buah pisang.** *I want bananas.*

PELAJARAN TUJUH (7)

Perbandingan

- 129 **The prefix 'pe' and suffix 'an'**
 The noun **perbandingan**: *comparison* is derived from the root verb **banding**: *to compare*. The use of the prefix **pe(r)** and the suffix **an** transforms the verb into a noun.
- 130 **The suffix 'kan'**
Bandingkan. The addition of the suffix **kan** to the root verb **banding**: *to compare*, has the effect of turning an intransitive verb into a transitive verb.
 It can also form verbs from adjectives e.g.
besar: *big*; **besarkan**: *to enlarge*
kecil: *small*; **kecilkan**: *to reduce*
- 131 **Comparison and use of daripada**
Bilik kami besar sedikit daripada bilik mereka. *Our room is a little larger than their room.*
- 132 **Perabut and para-para buku. Pun and juga**
Perabut is an Indonesian word meaning *furniture*.
Para-para buku pun tidak ada juga. *There is also no bookcase* (literal translation).
 Notice that **pun** and **juga** are often found in the same sentence; **pun** in the centre and **juga** at the end.
 Here **juga** means *also* and **pun** is used as a negative meaning *even* i.e. *there is not even a bookcase in the room*.
- 133 **Peminat senilukis**
 (a) The noun **peminat**: *an admirer; a fan* is derived from the verb **minat**: *having a liking for*
 e.g. **peminat bola sepak**: *a soccer fan*.
 (b) **Senilukis** is *the art of drawing*. **Seni** means *the art of*.
senidrama: *the art of drama*
senitari: *the art of dancing; ballet*
senimuzik: *the art of music*
senipahat: *the art of sculpture*

senisilat: *the art of Malay self-defence*

- 134 The prefix 'ke' plus suffix 'an'
Keadaan is *condition* or *state*. This is *ada* plus the prefix *ke* and the suffix *an*.
Keadaanya kemas dan teratur. *Its state is neat and orderly.*
- 135 Sahaja
sahaja: *only*; bukan sahaja pandai: *not only clever*.
The word *sahaja* is often pronounced *saja*.
- 136 The prefix 'se'
Serupa means *same as* or *alike*. This is formed by placing the prefix *se* in front of *rupa* meaning *appearance*.
- 137 Comparison lebih . . . daripada
Biliknya lebih kecil daripada bilik saya. *His room is smaller than mine.*
- 138 Pandai me. . .
Isteri Encik Lim pandai menghias rumah. *Mrs Lim is clever at decorating a house.*
This is a common construction e.g. pandai menari: *clever at dancing*; pandai melukis: *clever at drawing*.
Similarly:
suka membeli: *like buying*; jemu melihat: *sick of seeing*.
- 139 Matahari
Literally matahari: *the sun is the eye of the day*.
Similarly matajarum: *eye of a needle*; matakayu: *knot in wood*.
The verb menerangi: *to throw light on*; *to shine on* is from the adjective terang: *bright*.
The prefix *me* and the suffix *i* have transformed the adjective into a transitive verb. Similarly menerusi: *to go through*, from terus. And mendekati: *to approach* from dekat.
- 140 Sebagaimana
sebagaimana bilik kami: *similar to our room*.
The root of this is the interrogative adverb bagaimana meaning *how*?
It is frequently translated as *about*. An example of this: Bagaimana pendapat Encik tentang Singapura? *How about your opinion of Singapore?* i.e. *What do you think of Singapore?*

PELAJARAN LAPAN (8)

Satu lagi perbualan

- 141 Tahu
The verb mengetahui: *to know* is from the root word tahu: *to know* with the addition of the prefix *meng* and the suffix *i*.
Beritahu is *to tell* or *to inform*. This from *beri*: *to give* and *tahu*: *to know*.

- 142 Beza and seluruh
Saya tidak fikir ada banyak perbezaan di antara tetapi pada keseluruhannya saya pilih bilik anda.
I do not think there are many differences between but on the whole I choose your room.
(a) Perbezaan means *difference*. It comes from the word *beza*: *different*.
(b) Pada keseluruhannya means *on the whole*. The word *keseluruhannya* comes from the word *seluruh*: *all*; *throughout*.
- 143 Lebih suka
yang anda lebih suka means *which you like more (prefer)*.
Lebih: *more* is often used for comparisons, cf.
lebih besar: *bigger*
lebih kecil: *smaller*
lebih lemah: *weaker*
- 144 Gembira
Saya sungguh gembira mendengarnya. *I am very happy to hear it.*
The word *sungguh* means *true/truly*.
- 145 Memang
Memang lebih moden means *of course is more modern*.
Notice that the word *moden* is derived from the English word *modern*.
- 146 Berkahwin and berumah-tangga
(a) Berkahwin is *to get married*. It comes from the word *kahwin*.
Perkahwinan is *marriage*.
(b) Instead of *berkahwin*, the words *bernikah* or *berumah-tangga* may also be used e.g.
Dia sudah berkahwin/Dia sudah bernikah/Dia sudah berumah-tangga. *He is married.*
Literally *berumah-tangga* means *to have a house and stairs*. Idiomatically, it means *to have a family* i.e. *to get married*.
- 147 Tertarik hati
Tertarik hati means *to be attracted by* or *to be charmed by* or *interested in*.
- 148 Dibelinya: The passive voice
Perabutnya baru sahaja dibelinya. *Their furniture has only just been bought by them.*
The addition of *di* in front of a verb turns it into the passive e.g. *dibeli*: *was bought*; *diberi*: *was given*.
If the agent was he, she, it or they, then *nya* is added after the verb. e.g. *dibelinya*: *was bought by him/her/them*; *diberinya*: *was given by him/her/it*.
The passive in idiomatic form using *di* is very common in literature in narrative form and is translated into English in the active voice e.g. *Dipukulnya anjing itu. He/she/they hit the dog.*
Dibelinya buah itu. He/she/they bought the fruit.

149 **Bagaimana**
 Bagaimana pendapat anda tentang piano? *How about your opinion concerning the piano?*

150 **Kedua-duanya**
 kedua-dua bilik: *both of the rooms*; kedua-duanya: *both of them*; bukunya: *his book*. Nya, a third person pronoun, is the most useful of all the short or weak forms of pronouns. It also takes the place of *dia*, *mereka*, *beliau* and *dia orang*. Nya cannot be used as a subject; as an object it may mean, *him*, *her*, *it* or *them*. As a possessive it can mean, *his*, *her*, *its* or *their*. Nya also has other functions apart from being a pronoun.

151 **Sungguh, benar, sangat, amat, betul**
 Saya sungguh tertarik hati melihat lukisan-lukisan itu. *I was greatly impressed (on) seeing the drawings.*
 Besides *very much*, **sungguh** also means *true* or *truly*. There are several ways of rendering *very*: **sangat** in Bahasa Malaysia. The synonyms include **amat**, **benar** and **betul**. Examples: **sangat cantik**: *very beautiful*; **amat kecil**: *very small*; **besar benar**: *very big*; **kasar betul**: *very rough*.

152 **Telah, selama and limabelas**
 Kami telah berumah tangga selama limabelas tahun. *We have been married for fifteen years.*
 (a) **Telah**: *has/had/did* is used to show past tense, but is not used as often in conversation as in literature. Other examples are **setelah**: *when* and **setelah itu**: *after that*.
 (b) **lama**: *long* (of time) **selama**: *for* (a length of time).
 (c) **limabelas**: *fifteen* from **lima** (*five*) and **belas** added on to indicate *teen* in English.

PELAJARAN SEMBILAN (9)

Tetamu saya

153 **Di . . . orang**
 Bunyi pintu diketuk orang. *Sound of someone knocking at the door.*
 This is the same form of the idiomatic passive use of the verb as mentioned in Note 148. Here **diketuk orang** means *is struck by a person*, but is translated in the active voice *a person knocking*.

154 **Days of the week and lalu**
 (a) **Hari ini hari Sabtu**. *Today is Saturday.*
 The other days of the week are:
 hari Isnin *Monday*
 hari Selasa *Tuesday*

hari Rabu	<i>Wednesday</i>
hari Khamis	<i>Thursday</i>
hari Jumaat	<i>Friday</i>
hari Sabtu	<i>Saturday</i>
hari Ahad/Minggu	<i>Sunday</i>

(b) **Lalu** is equivalent to the English *last* i.e.
 Hari Ahad lalu is *last Sunday*. Hari Ahad depan is *next Sunday*

155 **Dengar and the prefix 'ter'**
 Kami dengar loceng pintu berbunyi. *We hear the door bell ring.*
Terdengar means *heard*. The prefix **ter** has four main functions and to remind you of them, here are some examples:
 (a) To indicate an accidental action
 Keretanya terlanggar tiang lampu. *His car ran into (accidentally) a lamp post.*
 (b) To indicate ability in completing an action
 Dia terangkat juga piano itu. *He was able to lift the piano.*
 (c) To express the superlative degree
 Dialah yang termasyur sekali. *He who is the most famous.*
 (d) To indicate a state of completion
 Surat itu sudah pun tertulis. *The letter has been written.*

156 **Buka and sila with the prefix 'me'**
 (a) The verb **membuka**: *to open* comes from the root word **buka** cf.
 buka pintu: *to open the door*
 buka kasut: *to take off the shoes*
 buka rahsia: *to reveal a secret*
 (b) The verb **mempersilakan**: *to invite* comes from the word **sila**. It is used to express a polite invitation to do something and corresponds to the English word *please*. It may be substituted by the verb **menjemput**: *invite* e.g.
 Dia mempersilakan saya masuk/Dia menjemput saya masuk: *He invited me in.*

157 **Alu-alu**
Mengalu-alukan: *to welcome* comes from the word **alu-alu**. The word **menyambut**: *to welcome* may be used in place of **mengalu-alukan**.

158 **Berjabat and bersalam**
berjabat tangan: *to shake hands*. **Bersalam** or **bersalam-salam** may be used in place of **berjabat tangan**.
 (a) **Bersalam**: *to shake hands* is derived from the Arabic word **salam**: *peace*. The act of shaking hands **bersalam** is common practice among the Malays. It is done between males (or females) of about the same age. A female Muslim does not shake hands with a male Muslim because it is considered immodest and goes against the teachings of their religion. In cases where two generations meet, the handshake takes the traditional form of the

younger person kissing the hand of the older as in the case of Norah and her uncle and aunt. The handshake is more of a touch, than a grip of the hands.

(b) mencium tangan: *to kiss the hand*.

159 Cerita and cuaca

Orang-orang perempuan bercerita tentang rumah tangga dan fesyen-fesyen pakaian yang terbaru. *The ladies talk about the household and about the latest fashions in clothing.*

(a) The word **bercerita**: *to recount* could have been reduplicated to convey the idea of a prolonged talk. The words **berbual**: *to chatter* and **bercakap** could be used.

(b) **Cuaca**: *weather*. Note the following phrases to describe the weather.

(i) cuaca hari ini muram (*dull*)

(ii) cuaca hari ini cerah (*clear*)

(iii) cuaca hari ini panas (*hot*)

(iv) cuaca hari ini mendung (*cloudy; it's going to rain*)

(v) cuaca hari ini nyaman (*cool, comfortable*)

(vi) cuaca hari ini hujan (*raining*)

(vii) cuaca hari ini ribut (*stormy*)

160 Sebuah, other coefficients and serta

(a) Note these numeral coefficients:

sebuah dulang *a tray*

lima biji cawan *five cups*

sebiji tekoh *a teapot*

sebiji piring *a plate*

sebuah mangkuk *a bowl for washing the right hand before eating*
cuci tangan

(b) Serta

Lima biji cawan di atasnya serta sebuah tekoh air teh. *Five cups on top of it along with a pot of tea.*

161 Mangkuk cuci tangan

Mangkuk cuci tangan (*a small bowl for washing the hand*) is usually served together with the food because most Malays use the fingers of the right hand to eat. Before eating, it is polite to wash the fingertips by dipping them into the bowl of water.

162 Tetamu

Tetamu is a very polite word for *guest* or *visitor* and used more in writing. In speech we could also use **orang datang** for *guests*. **Ruang-tamu** means *reception room* or *guest room*.

163 Edar and sedia

Isteri saya mengedarkan cawan-cawan teh. *My wife passes the cups round.*

Here the root of the verb is **edar**. More often we would encounter **menyediakan**: *make ready* or *prepare*, from the root **sedia**: *ready*.

164 Berbual-bual

See note 159 (a).

PELAJARAN SEPULUH (10)

Suatu lawatan

165 Lawatan

Melawat: *to visit* comes from the word **lawat**. **Pelawat** is *a visitor*; **lawatan** is *a visit*.

166 Sila

Sila masuk: *Please come in*, cf.

sila duduk: *please sit down*; **sila makan**: *please eat* (the meal); **silakan minum**: *please drink*; **silakan datang lagi**: *please come again*.

There is very little difference between **sila** and **silakan**.

167 Apa khabar and terima kasih

(a) **Apa khabar**: *what news?* is equivalent to the English *how are you?* A suitable reply would be **khabar baik**: *good news*.

(b) **Terima kasih** means *thank you*, literally, *receive (my) love*. This expression is used much less by Malays than by foreigners. Normally Malays would say **terima kasih** only to someone for a special favour. Malays indicate thanks more often with a gesture or a smile than with words. At times **baiklah** is substituted for **terima kasih**.

168 Maafkan saya

Maafkan saya could mean *please forgive me* if one has done something wrong. It could also mean *please excuse me* as in this case.

169 Barangkali and barang siapa

Barangkali means *perhaps* or *probably*, cf. **barang siapa**: *whosoever*. **Barang** on its own means *things*.

170 Pernah and berjumpa dengan

Saya tidak fikir anda sekalian pernah berjumpa dengan *I don't think you have ever met (with)*

171 Kenalkan

Mari saya kenalkan. *Allow me to introduce (you).*

The root of the verb is **kenal**: *to recognise*.

172 Tak and tidak

Tak is the weak form of **tidak**.

173 The prefix 'se', bertambah and paling

(a) **Dukacita sekali**: *very sad* or *unfortunately*.

(b) **Dari sehari ke sehari**: *from day to day*, cf.

dari sebulan ke sebulan: *from month to month*.

dari setahun ke setahun: *from year to year*.

- (c) Semakin buruk may be translated as *becoming worse*, cf.

semakin baik: *becoming better*;

semakin pandai: *becoming cleverer*.

Semakin is interchangeable with bertambah as in this lesson.

Sehabis buruk: *the worst*. The prefix *se* is used in a superlative sense, e.g. sejahat-jahat orang: *the most evil man*; sepandai-pandai budak: *the cleverest child*.

Instead of the prefix *se*, the word paling may be used to indicate the superlative. Paling should then be placed before the adjective e.g. paling buruk: *the worst*; paling berani: *the bravest*.

Saya harap keadaan tuan akan bertambah baik dalam sedikit hari lagi. *I hope your condition will improve in a short time*.

bertambah baik: *will improve or become better*.

sedikit hari lagi: *in a short time*.

174 Pasti

Saya kurang pasti pula. *I am not so sure*.

Kurang pasti means *not so sure*. Sometimes the phrase kurang periksa is used.

175 Pak Cik and kamu

Marilah masuk, Pak Cik gembira berjumpa dengan kamu. *Please come in, Pak Cik (I am) pleased to meet you*.

- (a) Pak Cik: *uncle*. In this context Pak Cik is used by the speaker to refer to himself. The use of the third person in this manner is common. Out of modesty Malays prefer not to use the first person pronoun, saya.

- (b) Kamu means *you* and *your* and is a second person singular pronoun. It is a form of address which is used only between close friends and by senior or elder persons when speaking to junior or younger persons.

176 Berapa lama? and berapa panjang?

Berapa lama? *How long?* (of time).

Berapa panjang?: *How long?* (of measurement)

PELAJARAN SEBELAS (11)

Di bilik makan

177 Makan

Kami makan pagi, makan tengah hari dan makan malam, di dalam bilik makan. *In the dining room we have our breakfast, lunch and dinner*.

A Malay family's daily meals consist of makan pagi: *breakfast*, makan tengah hari: *lunch*, and makan malam: *dinner*. The family with Western

habits may have tea (minum teh petang) as well. The traditional Malay family usually has separate meals for the men and the women. The men have their meals first, only then will the women have theirs.

178 Jadi

Menjadi: *becomes* is derived from the verb jadi: *to become*. Jadi is commonly used in the spoken language e.g. sudah jadi: *ready or completed*; jadi kerani: *to become a clerk*; hari jadi: *birthday*; jadilah: *agree*.

179 Sebelah

sebelah kiri: *on the left side*; sebelah kanan: *on the right side*; di hadapan: *in front of*.

180 Tense in Bahasa Malaysia

Sedang menghadapi (meja makan): *Are facing*. The word sedang indicates the incompleteness of an action and relates to the present tense. Dia sedang berlari: *He is running*.

- (a) The tense of the verb can be gauged from the context.

The simple verb without auxiliary words or affixes is in the PRESENT TENSE, e.g.

Saya baca buku. *I read a book or I am reading a book*.

- (b) The PAST TENSE is expressed by using any of the following auxiliary words; sudah, telah and habis, e.g. Saya sudah makan/ Saya telah makan. *I have eaten*.

Saya habis makan. *I ate*.

- (c) The FUTURE TENSE is indicated by the use of the words akan and hendak and may be rendered in English by the words shall and will, e.g.

Saya hendak makan. *I shall eat*.

Saya akan makan. *I will eat*.

The word mahu is often used in the colloquial language to express the future tense.

The word mahu means *want* and should be confined to expressing this meaning.

Saya mahu makan. *I want to eat*.

Nanti too, can be used for expressing the future tense.

Nanti saya makan. *I shall eat*.

- (d) A common method of expressing tense is by the use of adverbial expressions of time, e.g.

pagi tadi: *this morning*; semalam: *last night*; esok: *tomorrow*; sekarang: *now* etc.

(i) Pagi tadi saya makan roti. *This morning I ate bread*.

(ii) Semalam saya makan di rumah. *Last night I ate at home*.

(iii) Esok saya makan kuih-kuih. *Tomorrow I will eat cakes*.

(iv) Sekarang saya makan buah-buahan. *I am now eating fruits*.

181 Sehelai kain and colours

Sehelai kain. Notice that the numeral coefficient for cloth is sehelai and sehelai kain putih is *a piece of white cloth*. Putih is *white*. The

other main colours are listed below.

hitam	black	coklat	brown
ungu	purple	merah	red
biru	blue	kuning	yellow
hijau	green	merah jambu	pink
jingga	orange	kelabu	grey
perang	brown		

The darker shades of a colour are indicated by the word *tua* e.g. *biru tua*: dark blue and the lighter hues by the word *muda* e.g. *biru muda*: light blue.

182 Orang gaji

Orang gaji is the term for *servant*. It is a general term and is applicable to a male as well as a female employee. *Gaji* itself means *salary*.

183 Malay dishes

Here are a few typical Malay dishes:

kari ikan	fish curry
kari daging	meat curry
ikan goreng	fried fish
ayam goreng	fried chicken
sambal udang	prawns cooked in chilli
sup kambing	mutton soup
sayur lemak	vegetables cooked in coconut mix
asam pedas	fish cooked in chilli and tamarind
daun ulam	salad

184 Bersama-sama

... . *mempersilakan Encik Tan dan Encik Bala makan bersama-sama*. *invite Mr Tan and Mr Bala to dine with them* (lit. together).

PELAJARAN DUABELAS (12)

Perbualan di meja makan

185 Greetings

Salamat petang: *good evening* is a Westernised form of greeting. It is used generally by Malays who have had Western (English) education. The traditional greeting by Muslims irrespective of the time of day is still *As salam alaikum* (see note 16).

186 Please

Sila: *please*. In Bahasa Malaysia there are three equivalents of *please* namely *tolong*, *silalah* and *harap*. Each is used for a particular purpose.

(a) *Tolong* is used when a favour is asked e.g.

- (i) *Tolong buang sampah ini*. *Please throw away this rubbish.*
- (ii) *Tolong padamkan lampu*. *Please switch off the light.*

(b) *Sila* is used in invitations, e.g.

- (i) *Sila duduk*. *Please sit.*
- (ii) *Sila masuk*. *Please come in.*
- (iii) *Sila jamah kuih-kuih itu*. *Please eat the cakes.*

(c) *Harap* is used to express a wish or a hope, e.g.

Harap datang cepat. *Please come quickly.*

187 The prefix 'ter'

Terhidang: *served*. The prefix *ter* indicates a state of completion, cf.

- (a) *Surat itu sudah pun tertulis*. *The letter has been written.*
- (b) *Pintu itu tertutup*. *The door is closed.*

188 The prefix 'pe' and the suffix 'an'

(a) *Lawatan*: *a visit* is derived from the root word *lawat*. *Pelawat* is a visitor.

(b) *Ke mari*: *here*. It may also mean *come here*, e.g.

- (i) *Ke mari, saya hendak bercakap dengan awak*. *Come here, I wish to talk to you.*
- (ii) *Dia tidak datang ke mari semalam*. *He did not come here last night.*

189 Cardinal numbers

Pertama kali: *for the first time*; *pertama*: *first*.

It frequently occurs in the form *Kali yang pertama*: *The first time* (the time which is first).

190 Sengaja

Saya sengaja sediakan makanan. *I intentionally prepared food.*
tidak sengaja: *unintentionally*.

191 Ubah

Tak ada ubahnya dengan Kuala Lumpur ini. *There is no difference when compared to Kuala Lumpur.*

Tak ada ubahnya: *There isn't any difference.*
ubah: *change or alteration*.

192 Masak

Masakan is *food* or *a style of cooking*. It is a derivative of the word *masak*: *to cook*.

193 Dapat

Saya sungguh gembira tuan dan puan dapat datang. *I am very glad you were able to come.*

In this context *dapat* is *able* or *could* come.

194 Pada

Pada hari Isnin: *on Monday*. *Pada* is a preposition meaning *on* or *at*. It precedes the expression of time. *Pada* is usually used in the written language and often omitted in speech.

195 Bagi

Pertama kali bagi isteri saya ... : *First time for my wife* ...

In this context **bagi** means *for*. In the spoken language **bagi** means *give*. Besides that it also means *to divide*. It is sometimes spelt as **bahagi**. Do not substitute **kasi** for **bagi**. Avoid using the word **kasi** either in speech or in writing because it is 'coarse'.

196 Sana sini

... **dibina di sana sini**: ... *are built here and there* (literally, *there and here*).

Notice too **dibina** where **di** denotes the passive and is prefixed to the verb and **di sana** where **di** denotes place or direction (*at, on, in*).

PELAJARAN TIGABELAS (13)

Bilik tidur saya

197 Pasang and padam

memasang lampu letrik: *to switch on the electric light*.

Notice that the Malay word **letrik** is derived from the English word *electric*. The root word of **memasang** is **pasang**: *to light or cause to burn or shine*.

Padamkan lampu means *to put out the lamp or extinguish the lamp*.
hidupkan lampu/pasang lampu: *to light the lamp*.

198 The prefix 'ter'

Selepas beberapa minit saya tertidur dengan nyenyak. *After a few minutes I slept soundly*. **Tertidur**: *to fall asleep* is derived from the word **tidur**. The prefix **ter** suggests a state of completion. It can also be used to state an action which occurs accidentally, e.g. **Saya terge-lincir dan jatuh**. *I slipped (accidentally) and fell*.

199 Sepanjang

tidur sepanjang malam: *to sleep through the whole night*.

200 Alat

Alat-alat: *tools, utensils, instruments, equipment*.

Note the following uses of the word:

alat bunyi-bunyian: *musical instruments*; **alat perang**: *military hardware*; **alat pesolek**: *cosmetics*; **alat bercukur**: *shaving gear*; **alat bertukang kayu**: *tools for carpentry*; **alat tulis**: *stationery*.

201 The suffix 'kan'

Keringkan badan: *dry the body*. Notice that the root word of **keringkan** is the adjective **kering**: *dry*. The addition of **kan** has transformed the adjective **kering** into a verb. **Keringkan badan** may also be written as **mengeringkan badan**.

Other examples:

Adjectives		Verbs	
basah	wet	membasahkan	to wet
gembira	happy	menggembarakan	to make (a person) happy

susah	difficult	menyusahkan	to make (it) difficult
dalam	deep	mendalamkan	to deepen

202 Punya and kepunyaan

The word **kepunyaan**: *belongs to* is derived from the word **punya**: *to own*.

Examples:

Barang-barang ini bukan kepunyaan saya. *These things are not mine*.

Barang-barang ini kepunyaan isteri saya. *These things belong to my wife*.

203 Clothes (pakaian)

(a) **Almari pakaian** is *a wardrobe*.

(b) Here are some useful words to describe articles of clothing:

sehelai kemeja	a shirt
sehelai kemeja tangan pendek	a short-sleeved shirt
sehelai sapu tangan	a handkerchief
sepasang setokin	a pair of socks (from stocking)

(c) Notice that the word **sapu**: *to wipe* **tangan**: *hand* literally means *to wipe the hand*. The combination of verb and noun results in **sapu tangan**: *a handkerchief*. Literally **tali leher**: *a tie* is *a rope for the neck*.

204 Ambil and pergi

Saya terus mengambil tuala dan terus pergi ke... *Immediately I take a towel and go straight to...*

Notice that **ambil** takes the **me** prefix in this sentence construction but **pergi** is a verb to which no prefix or suffix is attached. It always appears in the root form

205 Shops (kedai)

The word **dobi** is derived from Indian sources.

Kedai dobi: *a laundry*; **kedai**: *shop or store*. (The synonyms are **gerai** and **toko**, and used more in Indonesia).

Note the following: **rumah kedai**: *a shop-house*; **kedai kasut**: *a shoe store*; **kedai buku**: *a book shop*; **kedai makan/restoran**: *a restaurant*; **kedai kopi**: *a coffee shop*; **kedai roti**: *a bakery or a shop which sells bread*; **kedai minyak**: *a petrol station*; **kedai bar**: *a bar*; **kedai pajak**: *a pawn shop*; **kedai runcit**: *a retail/sundry store*.

206 The prefix 'pe'

Penyangkut is derived from the verb **sangkut**: *to hang*. **Penyangkut baju** is therefore *a coat-hanger*. When applying the **pe** prefix to **sangkut** the **s** is dropped and replaced by **ny** so becoming **penyangkut**.

207 Setelah

Setelah mandi saya keringkan badan. *After bathing I dry my body*.

Setelah means *after*, but is more frequently used in written Bahasa Malaysia.

PELAJARAN EMPATBELAS (14)

Di waktu pagi dan malam

208 The time

There are several ways of telling the time in Bahasa Malaysia. Two standard methods are:-

- (a) For time that is PAST the hour, begin with the word **pukul**.
 - (b) For time that is TO the hour, begin with the word **kurang**.
- Literally **pukul** means *to strike* (when the clock strikes by the hour). However, it is used too for indicating the hour of the day. In this case **pukul** is equivalent to the English *o'clock*. The word **jam**: *hour* can also be substituted for the word **pukul** in the examples below.

- (a) for the exact hour

pukul sebelas	eleven o'clock
pukul tiga	three o'clock
- (b) for half past

pukul sebelas setengah	eleven thirty
pukul tiga setengah	three thirty
- (c) for a quarter past

pukul sebelas suku	eleven fifteen
pukul tiga suku	three fifteen
- (d) for a quarter to

kurang suku pukul sebelas	a quarter to eleven
kurang suku pukul tiga	a quarter to three
- (e) for odd minutes

pukul tiga sepuluh	ten minutes past three
kurang sepuluh minit pukul tiga	ten minutes to three
- (f) *a.m.* is expressed by **pagi**
p.m. is expressed by **petang** (in the evening) or **malam** (at night).
noon: tengah hari *afternoon*: **petang**
midnight: tengah malam *evening*: **petang**
morning: **pagi** *night*: **malam**

Further examples:

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 11.00 a.m. pukul sebelas pagi | 12 midnight pukul dua belas |
| 1.00 a.m. pukul satu pagi | tengah malam |
| 4.00 p.m. pukul empat petang | exactly midday pukul dua |
| 9.00 p.m. pukul sembilan malam | belas tengah hari tepat |
| 12 noon pukul dua belas tengah hari | |

Here are some other common expressions of time:

- | | |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| Pukul berapa sekarang? | What time is it now? |
| Tiap-tiap pagi | every morning |
| Dua kali seminggu | twice a week |
| Tiap-tiap hari | every day |
| Dalam dua hari | in two days' time |
| Minggu lepas | last week |
| Minggu depan | next week |
| Lain kali | next time |

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------|
| Beberapa hari yang lepas | several days ago |
| Sepanjang malam | all night long |
| Berapa lama lagi | how much longer |
| Lepas beberapa lama | after some time |
| Bila-bila masa | any time |
| Masa akan datang | in future |

209 Mengapa, sebab apa, apa fasal, kenapa

Mengapa pagi-pagi benar? *Why so early?*

Mengapa? *Why? For what reason?* Synonyms for this are: **kenapa**, **sebab apa** and **fasal apa**.

210 Pagi-pagi benar

Pagi-pagi benar: *so early* or *too early*. Literally **benar** means *true* or *correct*.

- (a) **Mengapa awak lambat benar?** *Why are you so late?*
- (b) **Mengapa cepat benar?** *Why so fast?*
- (c) **Lambat benar awak berjalan.** *You walk too slowly.*
- (d) **Cepat benar awak bercakap.** *You speak too fast.*

211 Jabat, pejabat and jabatan

Pejabat: *office*. Sometimes the word **opis**, which is derived from the English word *office*, is used. It is however better to use the word **pejabat**. The root word of **pejabat** is **jabat**: *to grasp, to hold*. Another derivative of **jabat** is **jabatan**: *department*.

212 Masuk, tiba and sampai

Examples:

Pukul berapa tuan masuk pejabat?/Pukul berapa tuan tiba di pejabat?/Pukul berapa tuan sampai di pejabat? *At what time did you arrive at the office?*

213 Waktu

Waktu malam: *night*.

The word **waktu**: *time* often precedes words like **waktu pagi**: *morning*; **waktu tengah hari**: *afternoon*; **waktu petang**: *evening*; **waktu malam**: *night*. **Waktu** means *a period of time* (see note 115).

214 Menonton and penonton

The verb **menonton**: *to view; to watch; to see* is derived from the root word **tonton**. The noun form of **tonton** is **penonton**: *spectator* which is formed by the simple addition of the prefix **pe**. Examples:

- | | | |
|----------------|----------|-----------------------------|
| pendengar | listener | (root word dengar) |
| para pendengar | audience | (root word dengar) |
| penari | dancer | (root word tari) |
| perusuh | rioter | (root word rusuh) |
| pemerhati | observer | (root word perhati) |

215 Malam, semalam, besok, kelmarin

Note these additional expressions of time

Malam semalam: *last night*; **malam esok (besok)**: *tomorrow night*; **malam ini**: *tonight*; **malam kelmarin**: *yesterday night*.

- 216 **Menarik hati**
Literally sebuah filem yang sangat menarik hati means a film that is very attractive to the heart, i.e. a good film, an interesting film. Notice that the word filem is of English origin.
- 217 **Jarang and kadang-kadang**
Jarang-jarang sekali: *very rarely, seldom or not often*; jarang: *rarely*; kadang-kadang: *once in a while or sometimes*. Examples:
Jarang-jarang sekali kami pergi menonton wayang gambar. *Very rarely do we go to the cinema.*
Kadang-kadang kami pergi menonton wayang gambar. *Sometimes we go to the cinema.*
- 218 **Majlis and repetition of words**
Majlis tari-menari is a dance (a social gathering for a dance). The word majlis usually means an official assembly or a social function, e.g.
majlis perkahwinan: a wedding ceremony; majlis berkhitan: a circumcision ceremony; majlis bahas: a debate; majlis undangan: a legislative assembly.
Tari-menari is another form of repetition to indicate a variety of dances. Notice that the verb menari: *to dance* is derived from the word tari. Another derivative of tari is tarian: a dance. Penari is a dancer (see also note 217).
- 219 **Benar and derivative words.**
Sebenarnya means *the truth is, actually or in fact*. Its root word is benar: *true, correct*. Other derivatives of the word benar are: membenarkan: *to allow, to approve, to permit*; kebenaran: *assent, approval, permission*.
- 220 **Nampak and nampaknya**
Tetapi tuan masih nampak muda lagi. *But you still look young.* (Here it means *appearance*.)
Dia nampak saya di bandar. *He saw me in town.* (Here it means *saw by chance*.)
In the following context however nampak means *to appear to be*, e.g. Nampaknya awak tak kenal saya lagi. *It appears that you do not recognise me any more.* This is an impersonal statement.
- 221 **Kenal and akan**
Berkenalan: *to get acquainted with*. Its root word is kenal: *to get to know*. Other derivatives of kenal are: mengenalkan: *to introduce*; akan kenalkan: *will introduce*; perkenalan: *acquaintance* (akan is a word used for emphasis).
- 222 **Hati and derivatives**
The word hati means *the liver*, which was thought to be the source of all emotions. Also primitive tribes have long regarded the liver as the most vital part of the body. So here are some idiomatic uses of expressions including hati.

patah hati	broken hearted
sagu hati	compensation, allowance
makan hati	to brood, to eat the heart out
puas hati	to be satisfied
putih hati	to be sincere
tawar hati	to be discouraged
berdebar hati	to be excited
belas hati	to be compassionate
besar hati	to be proud, a feeling of conceit
buah hati	a loved one
putus hati	to be in despair

- 223 **Ucap**
Saya ucapkan setinggi-tinggi tahniah. *I wish (you) congratulations. My heartiest congratulations.*
Setinggi-tinggi here expresses the superlative i.e. the heartiest or literally the highest.
ucap takziah: *to express condolence*.
Saya telah mengucapkan takziah kepada Ahmad. *I expressed condolence to Ahmad.*

PELAJARAN LIMABELAS (15)

Hotel

- 224 **Hotel**
The word hotel is of English origin. The Bahasa Malaysia word rumah tumpangan is rarely used.
- 225 **Musim cuti**
Jika tuan tidak mahu merasa kecewa, terutama pada musim cuti, lebih baik tuan menempah bilik-bilik itu dahulu. *If you do not wish to be disappointed, especially during the holiday season, it would be better for you to book your rooms beforehand.*
(a) The following phrases are often used:
terutama: *especially*; musim cuti: *holiday season*; dahulu: *previously, beforehand*.
(b) kecewa: *disappointed*.
(c) The verb menempah is derived from the root word tempah: *to book*. Tempahan is *booking*. The addition of the suffix an has converted the verb into a noun.
Sudahkah awak menempah tiket kapal terbang awak? *Have you booked your air ticket?*
Sudahkah tempahan awak disahkan? *Has your booking been confirmed?*
- 226 **Dapati**
Tuan akan dapati hotel-hotel di Kuala Lumpur sama seperti hotel-hotel di lain-lain bandaraya. *You will find that the hotels in Kuala*

Lumpur are similar to the hotels in other cities.

The verb **dapati** is derived from the root word **dapat** which means *to obtain, to get or to find*.

227 Lah, ke, me plus kan

*. . . Hendaklah pergi ke dewan sambutan dan mendaftarkan nama.
. . . Ought to go to the reception desk and register.*

The enclitic participle **lah** emphasises the word to which it is attached. **pergi ke** **Ke** indicates motion towards a place, **kepada** indicates motion towards a person.

mendaftarkan Here the root word is **daftar**: *a list* to which is added the **me(n)** prefix and **kan** suffix to form a transitive verb.

228 Pemandu and forming words with the prefix 'pe'

Pemandu means *a guide*, from the word **pandu**: *to guide*. Many verbs and adjectives can be changed into nouns by the addition of the **pe** prefix in this way. The **pe** resulting new word expresses either an AGENT (the doer) or an INSTRUMENT, e.g. **pelawat**: *visitor* from **lawat**: *to visit* or **pembuka**: *opener* from **buka**: *to open*.

The **pe** prefix corresponds to the English suffix **er** in pairs of words such as *do* and *doer*, *advise* and *adviser*.

Examples:

The root consonants indicated in brackets are dropped when the prefix **pe** is attached to them.

Adjectives and Verbs		Nouns		Root consonants
lukis	<i>to draw</i>	pelukis	<i>an artist</i>	l
layan	<i>to entertain,</i> <i>to serve</i>	pelayan	<i>a waiter,</i> <i>a waitress</i>	l
nyanyi	<i>to sing</i>	penyanyi	<i>a singer</i>	ny
malas	<i>lazy</i>	pemalas	<i>one who is lazy</i>	m
nasihat	<i>advice</i>	penasihat	<i>an adviser</i>	n
rajuk	<i>to sulk</i>	perajuk	<i>sulker</i>	r
beli	<i>to buy</i>	pembeli	<i>a buyer,</i> <i>a customer</i>	b
(p)ukul	<i>to hit</i>	pemukul	<i>a bat, an</i> <i>instrument for</i> <i>hitting</i>	(p)
curi	<i>to steal</i>	pencuri	<i>a thief</i>	c
(t)ipu	<i>to deceive</i>	penipu	<i>a trickster,</i> <i>a cheater,</i> <i>a deceiver,</i>	(t)
judi	<i>to gamble</i>	penjudi	<i>a gambler</i>	j
dukung	<i>to carry on</i> <i>the hips</i>	pendukung	<i>one who carries</i>	d

ganas	<i>fierce</i>	pengganas	<i>a terrorist</i>	g
hasut	<i>to instigate</i>	penghasut	<i>an instigator</i>	h
(k)acau	<i>to disturb</i>	pengacau	<i>a disturber</i>	(k)
adil	<i>fair, just</i>	pengadil	<i>a referee</i>	a
elat	<i>to cheat</i>	pengelat	<i>a cheater</i>	e
impot	<i>to import</i>	pengimpot	<i>an importer</i>	i
ukur	<i>to measure</i>	pengukur	<i>a measurer</i>	u
(s)impan	<i>to keep</i>	penyimpan	<i>a keeper</i>	(s)

229 Angkat

The root word of the verb **mengangkat**: *to lift* is **angkat**.

230 Beg pakaian

Beg(-beg) pakaian: *suitcase(s)*. The word **beg** is of English origin. The root word for **pakaian**: *clothing* is **pakai**: *to use, to wear*. Notice that the suffix **an** has converted the verb into a noun. Literally **beg(-beg) pakaian** means *bag(s) for clothing* i.e. *suitcase(s)*.

231 Urusan

The verb **menguruskan**: *to arrange* is derived from the root word **urus**. In another context it may mean *to manage*. **Pengurus** is therefore a *manager*. **Pihak pengurus** is the *management* and **urusan**: *business, affairs, management*.

232 Ambil

The verb **mengambil**: *to take* is derived from the verb **ambil**. **Ambil** is often idiomatically used as in the following examples:-

ambil angin	<i>to take a walk</i>
ambil berat	<i>to take pains; to care about</i>
ambil hati	<i>to take to heart; to feel hurt</i>
ambil tauladan	<i>to take as an example</i>
ambil ujian	<i>to sit for an examination or test</i>
ambil contoh	<i>to take as an example</i>
ambil keputusan	<i>to take a decision</i>
ambil senang/mudah	<i>to take it easy</i>
ambil tindakan	<i>to take action</i>

233 Orang-orang

Literally **orang-orang di dalam pejabat hotel** means *the people in the office of the hotel* i.e. *the receptionists, the clerks, etc.*

234 Patut

Yang patut tuan lihat means *which you ought to see*.

patut: *should, fair or proper*.

Dia yang patut menerima hadiah itu. *He is the one who should receive the prize.*

235 Juru

Jurubahasa: *interpreter*. Literally it means *one who is skilled in a language*. **Juru** usually describes a person who is skilled in some trade or is an expert. The synonym for **juru** is **ahli**.

Here is a useful list of words:

seorang juruterengkas	<i>a shorthand typist</i>
seorang jurucakap	<i>a spokesman</i>
seorang jururawat	<i>a nurse</i>
seorang juruselam	<i>a diver</i>
seorang jurutera	<i>an engineer</i>
seorang jurugambar	<i>a photographer</i>
seorang jurutulis (kerani)	<i>a clerk</i>
seorang juruhebah	<i>an announcer</i>
seorang jurutaip	<i>a typist</i>

- 236 **Urusan perniagaan**
Urusan perniagaan: *business*. The noun **urusan:** *business* is derived from the verb **urus:** *to manage*. The noun **perniagaan:** *trade* is derived from the verb **niaga:** *to trade*. **Peniaga** is a trader.

PELAJARAN ENAMBELAS (16)

Menempah bilik

- 237 **Sudah**
Kita sudah (sampai) di sini. *Here we are. (We have (arrived) here).*
Sudah indicates past tense. **Sampai** means *arrive*. Its synonyms are **tiba** and **datang**. Some phrases with **sampai** are: **sampai ajal:** *to pass away (of death)*; **sampai hati:** *have the heart to*.
- 238 **Hendak**
Ini hotel yang hendak kita sewa? We can also say, **Hotel ini yang hendak kita sewa?** *Is this the hotel we are going to rent (live in)?*
Hendak here indicates intention. **sewa:** *hire or rent*; **kereta-sewa:** *a hired car*; **rumah-sewa:** *a rented house*; but when we say **sewa rumah ini sangat murah**, it means that *the rent of the house is very cheap*.
- 239 **Baiklah**
Baiklah, in this context, means *all right (or OK)* and is often used in the colloquial form, especially when a person gives an order and the reply is one of agreement.
- 240 **Pemandu**
Pemandu kereta: *driver or chauffeur*. The synonym is **drebar**. The root word for **pemandu** is **pandu**. The prefix **pe** can be added to the verbs, nouns and adjectives. The following sentences illustrate the functions of the prefix **pe**.
Peladang itu bekerja sangat kuat. *The farmer works very hard.*
Penulis buku ini terkenal di Malaysia. *The writer of this book is well known in Malaysia.*
In the above sentences, the prefix **pe** has converted a noun, **ladang:** *a field* and a verb, **tulis:** *to write* into words describing AGENTS **peladang:** *a farmer* and **penulis:** *a writer*.

Harga penyapu itu ialah seringggit. *The broom costs a dollar.*
Pembuka tin susu sudah hilang. *The milk tin opener cannot be found.*
In these sentences the prefix **pe** has been affixed to verbs, **sapu:** *to sweep* and **buka:** *to open* resulting in nouns describing INSTRUMENTS.
Guru itu seorang peramah. *The teacher is an affable person.*
Dia tidak suka orang pemalas. *He does not like lazy persons.*
In these sentences the prefix **pe** has been affixed to adjectives, **ramah:** *affable* and **malas:** *lazy*. The resulting words describe attributes of persons. This is not a general rule as with all the above examples. However these illustrations show the general effect of using this prefix.

- 241 **Dewan**
Saya akan tunggu anda di dewan. *I will wait for you in the hall.*
A synonym for **dewan** is **balai**. **Dewan** also means *a council of state* e.g. **Dewan Rakyat:** *parliament*.
- 242 **Barangkali**
Barangkali: *may be, possible or perhaps* is often mispronounced by users of the bazaar language.
- 243 **Hadapan and the suffix 'an'**
Hadapan: *in front*. The root word is **hadap**.
The suffix is **an**. **Hadap** means *position in front of, to face or front*. The colloquial form is **depan**. The suffix **an** when suffixed to verbs (that often take a prefix as well) forms nouns which are connected in some way or other with the action or state expressed by the verb. Examples:
- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| laut: <i>sea</i> | lautan: <i>ocean</i> |
| aku: <i>to admit</i> | akuan: <i>confession</i> |
| ukur: <i>to measure</i> | ukuran: <i>measurement</i> |
| jual: <i>to sell</i> | jualan: <i>goods for sale</i> |
- 244 **Secapat**
Saya akan datang secepat mungkin. *I will come as quickly as possible.*
This is a useful expression and construction to memorise.

PELAJARAN TUJUHBELAS (17)

Di sebuah restoran

- 245 **Sebuah restoran**
Di sebuah restoran: *in a restaurant*. This word is from English and another word for **restoran** is **kedai makan**. The word **kedai** means *shop*.
- 246 **Terdapat**
Di bandar-bandar besar terdapat banyak restoran, kedai kopi dan

kedai bar. *In big towns are found many restaurants, coffee shops and bars.*

In this text, *terdapat* can be translated *are found*.

247 Minuman and the suffix 'an'

Minuman: *drinks* is formed from the root word **minum:** *to drink*. The following sentences give examples of the functions of the suffix **an**.

- (a) **Makanan** ini sedap. *The food is delicious.*
- (b) **Galian** yang boleh didapati di Malaysia ialah emas dan besi. *Two minerals found in Malaysia are gold and iron.*
- (c) **Bacaan** murid ini sangat baik. *The student's reading is very good.*
- (d) **Lawatan** saya ke Kuala Lumpur sangat pendek. *My visit to Kuala Lumpur is very short.*

In the above four sentences, verbs were converted to nouns by the addition of the suffix **an**.

248 Words used frequently and used incorrectly.

Banyak restoran: *many restaurants*. The word **banyak** is often used incorrectly in bazaar Malay, e.g. **banyak baik** for *very good*. It should be **baik betul** or **baik sungguh**.

Here are examples of bazaar Bahasa Malaysia which should be avoided:

- (a) **Punya**, which is rarely heard in good Bahasa Malaysia, is often used in the bazaar language to indicate possession e.g.

Incorrect	English	Correct
Saya punya kereta.	<i>My car.</i>	Kereta saya.
Ahmad punya bapa punya rumah.	<i>Ahmad's father's house.</i>	Rumah bapa Ahmad.
Munah punya baju.	<i>Munah's shirt.</i>	Baju Munah.

(b) **Kasi** colloquially means *to give*. The preferred word is **beri** or **bagi**.

Incorrect	English	Correct
Kasi dia.	<i>Give him.</i>	Beri dia.
Saya punya bapa kasi saya dua ringgit.	<i>My father gave me two dollars.</i>	Bapa saya beri saya dua ringgit.
Kasi saya makanan.	<i>Give me food.</i>	Beri saya makanan.

(c) **Sama** in bazaar language is used for expressing a direct or indirect object, e.g.

Incorrect	English	Correct
Saya tengok sama dia.	<i>I saw him.</i>	Saya nampak dia.
Saya kasi duit sama dia.	<i>I give him money.</i>	Saya beri dia wang.

(d) **Bikin** in bazaar Bahasa Malaysia is used incorrectly as a synonym for **buat**, e.g.

Incorrect	English	Correct
Baju ini dia bikin.	<i>He made this shirt.</i>	Dia buat baju ini.
Bukan senang bikin.	<i>It's not easy to do it.</i>	Susah hendak membuatnya.

Tak tahu bikin.	<i>I do not know how to do it.</i>	Tak tahu buat.
-----------------	------------------------------------	----------------

249 Begini and begitu

Begini: *this way* originates from the words **bagai ini**. **Begitu** is the antonym for **begini** and its synonyms are **demikian**, **macam itu**. **Begitu** also means *very*, e.g. **Mereka hidup begitu mewah**.

250 The prefix 'ke' and the suffix 'an'

Kebanyakan: *majority*. The prefix **ke** and suffix **an** have been added to the root word **banyak**.

At times affixes are used with repetitive words, e.g.

kekuning-kuningan: *yellowish*; **kebudak-budakan:** *childish, naive*; **kegila-gilaan:** *to behave like a mad man*.

Words formed with the affixes **ke...an** fall into three categories.

(a) Words denoting state or condition, e.g.

jahat: <i>wicked</i>	kejahatan: <i>wickedness</i>
manusia: <i>man</i>	kemanusiaan: <i>humane</i>
tentu: <i>certain</i>	ketentuan: <i>certainty</i>

(b) Words denoting place, e.g.

diam: <i>dwelt</i>	kediaman: <i>dwelling place</i>
---------------------------	--

(c) Adjectives derived from verbal roots, e.g.

dengar: <i>hear</i>	kedengaran: <i>being heard</i>
lihat: <i>see</i>	kelihatan: <i>being seen</i>
curi: <i>steal</i>	kecurian: <i>theft</i>

251 Coefficients used in Bahasa Malaysia

orang	for human beings, e.g. clerk, teacher, officer, etc.
ekor	for other living creatures, e.g. animals, fishes, insects, birds, etc.
buah	for large things or things with irregular shapes, e.g. houses, ships, rivers, books, classrooms, etc.
biji	for small things, such as fruits, cooking utensils, e.g. bowls, plates and round things which are small, etc.
batang	for rod-like things and things which are long, e.g. trees, pencils, walking sticks, etc.
helai	for things that occur in thin layers or sheets, e.g. paper, cloth, feathers, hair, etc.
pucuk	for letters, firearms, needles, etc.
keping	for pieces, slabs, fragments, e.g. wood, paper, bread, land, etc.
bilah	for articles with (metal) blades, e.g. knives, spears.
bentuk	for rings and fishing hooks.

252 Lebih-kurang

Jenis makanan tengah hari dan makan malam lebih-kurang sama. *The type of food for midday and evening meals is more or less identical.*

PELAJARAN LAPANBELAS (18)

Menempah makanan

253 Layan and pelayan

Pelayan, adakah meja ini kosong? *Is this table free (waitress or waiter)?*

Pelayan which means *waiter* or *waitress* and also *attendant*, is derived from **layan**: *to serve*.

Other connected words

pelayan hotel: *a waiter or waitress in a hotel*

pelayan laki-laki: *a waiter*

pelayan kapalterbang: *a flight steward or air hostess*

254 Kah and adakah

When the interrogative article **kah** is used as a suffix to a word in a clause, it implies a question.

In conversation the suffix **kah** is usually omitted as the tone of the voice (with its rising inflection and the questioning tone) is sufficient, e.g. **apa itu?** **apa kata dia?** (*Adakah* means *whether*.)

Compare the following questions and statements.

Statements

Dia sudah makan nasi.

Baju awak itu besar.

Lim yang melukis gambar ini.

Questions

Dia sudah makan nasikah?

Baju awak itu besarkah?

Limkah yang melukis gambar ini?

In the above three sentences the suffix **kah** is used to make the statements into questions. Also note that it emphasises the word to which it is attached, i.e. **nasikah**, **besarkah**, **Limkah**.

255 Manis-manisan and the suffix 'an'

Manis-manisan means a *variety of sweet dishes*. We already know a little about the suffix **an**.

Given below are more examples for your guidance. They are explained under four categories.

(a) The suffix **an** forms collective nouns expressing extent or variety. The idea of variety being sometimes reinforced by the duplication of the root word.

masak-masakan: *cooked dishes of various kinds*

buah-buahan: *fruits of many kinds*

tanam-tanaman: *agricultural crops of many kinds*

puji-pujian: *conventional compliments at the beginning of a formal letter*.

(b) It forms nouns, standing for concrete things on which an action is performed or abstract nouns.

tujuan: *that which is aimed at*; **cetakan**: *that which has been printed*; **kasihan**: *pity*; **pinjaman**: *loan*.

(c) It forms adjectives which are sometimes purposive and sometimes passive. These are nouns, but their placing gives them an adjectival function.

sekolah latihan: *a training school*; **surat kenalan**: *a letter of introduction*.

256 The demonstratives ini and itu

Ini tuan. *Here you are sir.*

Dan selepas itu tuan? *And after that sir?*

The demonstratives **ini** and **itu** (particularly **itu**) are the equivalent of the English definite article *the*. There is the implication that the thing to which the noun refers has been under discussion, or is familiar to the speaker or well known to everybody, e.g. **dan selepas itu** tuan.

Here are examples to guide you on the use of **ini** and **itu**.

(a) Adjectival or pronominal use. When they are ADJECTIVES they follow the noun.

burung itu: *that bird*; **kasut ini**: *this shoe*.

When they are PRONOUNS they precede the noun.

itu harimau: *that is a tiger*; **ini buku**: *this is a book*.

(b) When used adjectivally they come after any other attributive adjective or adjectival phrase which qualifies the noun.

buku tebal itu: *that thick book*; **baju yang baru itu**: *the new shirt*.

(c) Any adjective which comes after **ini** or **itu** is predicative.

kuih ini sudah basi: *this cake is not fresh*.

(d) **Ini** is sometimes used as an intensive adjective.

aku ini: *I myself*; **mak ini**: *mother, you are unfair* (note the conversational use of **ini** with a note of protest).

(e) **Ini** and **itu** may be used for qualifying phrases or sentences.

Datangnya awak berdua ini sangat sukakan hati saya. *The arrival of the two of you has made me very happy*.

Note that **ini** qualifies the whole clause.

257 Tolong, sila and cuba

Tolong bawakan dua gelas minuman itu. *Please bring two glasses of the drink*.

Tolong is a polite request or *please*. Besides **tolong**, one of the following words may be used.

sila: literally *welcome*. **Sila duduk**. *Please sit*.

cuba: literally *to try*. **Cuba buka pintu ini**. *Please open the door*.

258 Sama-sama:

This is the stock answer to **terima kasih**: *thank you* and is the equivalent of *you're welcome*.

259 Ingin

Saya juga ingin minum air limau. *I too long for a lime drink*.

Ingin means *to desire* or *long for* and is a little more intense than **mahu**: *to want*.

260 Merdu and manis

Lagu-lagu sungguh merdu. *The tunes are very sweet (sounding)*.

Teh ini manis sangat. *The tea is very sweet (to the taste)*.

PELAJARAN SEMBILANBELAS (19)

Angka, masa dan tarikh

261 Numbers and telling the time

Angka: masa dan tarikh. Numerals: times and dates.

In Bahasa Malaysia the system of numbering is straightforward.

(a) Cardinal Numbers

(i) One to ten (1 to 10)

- | | |
|--------------------|---|
| 1. se, satu, suatu | 8. lapan or delapan (lapan is more commonly used) |
| 2. dua | 9. sembilan |
| 3. tiga | 10. sepuluh (this always appears in this form and never in the combination of satu and puluh) |
| 4. empat | |
| 5. lima | |
| 6. enam | |
| 7. tujuh | |

(ii) The English suffix *teen* is denoted by *belas*, from eleven to nineteen (11 to 19).

- | | |
|----------------|-------------------|
| 11. sebelas | 16. enambelas |
| 12. duabelas | 17. tujuhbelas |
| 13. tigabelas | 18. lapanbelas |
| 14. empatbelas | 19. sembilanbelas |
| 15. limabelas | |

(iii) Tens are denoted by *puluh*.

- | | |
|----------------|-------------------|
| 10. sepuluh | 60. enampuluh |
| 20. daupuluh | 70. tujuh puluh |
| 30. tigapuluh | 80. lapanpuluh |
| 40. empatpuluh | 90. sembilanpuluh |
| 50. limapuluh | |

Other examples:

- | | | | |
|----------------|----|---------------------|----|
| duapuluh satu | 21 | enampuluh tiga | 63 |
| tigapuluh dua | 32 | sembilanpuluh empat | 94 |
| lapanpulu lima | 85 | | |

(iv) Hundreds are denoted by *ratus*.

- | | | | |
|-------------|-----|----------------------------|-----|
| seratus | 100 | tujuh ratus | 700 |
| empat ratus | 400 | lapan ratus dua puluh satu | 821 |

(v) Thousands are denoted by *ribu*.

- | | | | |
|------------|-------|--------------------|--------|
| seribu | 1,000 | tiga ribu | 3,000 |
| lapan ribu | 8,000 | duapuluh tiga ribu | 23,000 |

(vi) The remaining multiples are:

- 10,000 sepuluh ribu.
100,000 seratus ribu or seketi.
1,000,000 satu juta.
8,821,462 will be read like this – lapan juta lapan ratus duapuluh satu ribu, empat ratus enampuluh dua.

Note that the English conjunction *and* is not used in compound numbers as shown above.

In the same way the conjunction *or* should be omitted between numbers, e.g.

three or four

thirteen or fourteen

thirty or forty

six or seven hundred

eight or nine thousand

tiga empat

tiga empat belas

tiga empat puluh

enam tujuh ratus

lapan sembilan ribu

However you may find many well-known writers and grammarians using *atau* for *or*, e.g. *three or four children*: **tiga atau empat orang kanak-kanak.**

(b) Ordinal Numbers

In Bahasa Malaysia the ordinals are formed from the cardinals. Except for *the first*, all other cardinals are formed by adding the prefix *ke* to the ordinals with the word *yang* before them, e.g.

yang pertama or *yang kesatu*: *first*. (*Pertama* is from the Sanskrit word *prathama* which also means *first*.) *yang kedua*: *second*; *yang ketiga*: *third*; *yang keempat*: *fourth*; *yang kesepuluh*: *tenth*.

Note that the ordinal numbers, being true adjectives, always follow the noun to which they are attached, e.g.

pelumba yang pertama: *the first runner*.

(c) Fractions

suku (satu suku) $\frac{1}{4}$ setengah $\frac{1}{2}$

tiga suku $\frac{3}{4}$ (tiga suku as an idiomatic expression means *insane* or *mentally unbalanced*).

Other than the above, fractions are expressed by *per* meaning *upon*, e.g.

dua pertiga	$\frac{2}{3}$	empat pertujuh	$\frac{4}{7}$
tiga perlapan	$\frac{3}{8}$	tujuh persembilan	$\frac{7}{9}$

(d) Percentage is denoted by *peratus*, e.g.

limapuluh peratus 50%; tigapuluh dua peratus 32%; sembilanpuluh peratus 90%

(e) Decimal point is denoted by *perpuluhan*.

e.g. 3.2 tiga perpuluhan dua.

262 Dates and days of the week

(a) Terikh: *date*. The days of the month are denoted by cardinal numerals BEFORE the word *hari*.

e.g. *Hari ini berapa haribulan?* *What is the date today?*

Tiga haribulan tiga/Mac. *The third of March.*

(b) The days of the week are as follows:

hari Isnin	Monday	hari Jumaat	Friday
hari Selasa	Tuesday	hari Sabtu	Saturday
hari Rabu	Wednesday	hari Ahad	Sunday
hari Khamis	Thursday		

(c) The Malay method of dating A.D. is the abbreviated form *M.* for *Masehi*: "*The year of the Messiah*". The Malay equivalent of *The Christian Era* is *Terikh Masehi*.

The common abbreviation of *H.* stands for *Hijrah* – the flight of the Prophet Mohammed from Mecca in A.D. 622, Muslim calendar.

- 263 **Phrases using the word satu**
Pukul satu: *one o'clock*. From the word *satu* the following phrases are formed.
satu-satu: one by one; lepas satu, satu: one after the other; lepas seorang, seorang: one (person) after another; seseorang: anybody, everybody; tak satu, satu: if it is not one thing it's another.
- 264 **Phrases using the word jam**
Jam tangan: *wrist watch*. Other meanings for *jam* are *clock, time, meter, an hour, during the time*, cf.
jam dinding: a wall clock; jam kerja: working hours; jam satu: one o'clock; satu jam: one hour; jam pelajaran: teaching hour; berjam-jam: for many hours.
- 265 **Belas**
Pukul dua belas: *twelve o'clock*. *Belas* also means *pity, have sympathy*, usually in the form of *belas kasihan*.
Minit means *minute* from the English word.
- 266 **Kadang-kadang and selalu.**
Kadang-kadang in this context means *sometimes*. The antonym is *selalu*.
- 267 **Haribulan**
Pada dua puluh haribulan bulan enam means *on 20th June*. In correspondence *haribulan* is abbreviated as *hb*.
- 268 **Untuk meaning 'for'**
Untuk dibaiki dan dibersihkan. For repair and cleaning.

PELAJARAN DUAPULUH (20)

Nama hari dan bulan

- 269 **The division of the day**
Tahukah tuan nama-nama hari dalam seminggu? *Do you know the days of the week?*
Hari: day. The following connected words are of interest.
siang hari: during the day, daylight; setengah hari: half a day; tengah hari: noon, afternoon; malam hari: night; petang hari: evening; hari-bulan: date.
- 270 **Minggu**
Seminggu means *one week*. When we say *hari minggu*, it means *Sunday*. *Mingguan* means *weekly*, e.g. *majallah mingguan: weekly magazine*. *Seminggu-mingguan* means *throughout the week*.
- 271 **Days of the week**
Ya iaitu hari Ahad, Isnin, Selasa, Rabu, Khamis, Jumaat dan Sabtu. Yes, they are Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday,

Friday and Saturday.

Hari Ahad, Isnin, Rabu etc. are the Arabic names for the days of the week. The student should know about *hari Jumaat* which means *assembly day*. On that day Muslims assemble at the Mosque to pray. It is a religious obligation.

- 272 **Besok and esok**
Jadi besok hari apa? *So, what will tomorrow be?*
Besok/esok: tomorrow.
esok lusa: near future (literally tomorrow and the day after tomorrow)
esoknya: the day after.
- 273 **Lusa**
Dan lusa hari apa? *And what is the day after tomorrow?*
Lusa: the day after tomorrow.
- 274 **Semalam**
Semalam hari apa? *What day was it yesterday?*
- 275 **Kelmarin**
Dan kelmarin hari apa? *And what was the day before yesterday?* In speech, the *l* in *kelmarin* is usually silent. It is often so written. Apart from being *the day before yesterday*, it also means *yesterday, a few days or a week ago*. Be guided by the context in which it is used.
- 276 **Malam Sabtu and the Muslim day**
Malam Sabtu means *Friday evening* and not *Saturday evening*.
The Muslim day begins at 6 p.m. and not at midnight. This means that the period of darkness goes entirely with the following period of daylight and is not divided between the preceding and following daylight periods. **Pukul tujuh malam Rabu** means *seven p.m. on Tuesday* (not Wednesday). As a rough guide, subtract one day from the day mentioned in the expression.
- 277 **The Muslim year**
In Malaysia the Western calendar is used by all races. The Muslim calendar is used only by the Muslims. The Muslim year, a lunar year, is eleven days shorter than the solar year. The months are known by their Arabic names and are of 30 days and 29 days alternately.
- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Maharram 30 days | 9. Ramadan (or Bulan Puasa — the month of the fast) |
| 2. Safar 29 days | 10. Syawal (or Bulan Hari Raya the month of the great feast, Hari Raya Puasa) |
| 3. Ribi ul awal (or Bulan Maulud — the month of the Prophet's Birthday) | 11. Zul-kaedah |
| 4. Rabi ul-akhir | 12. Zul-hejjah the month of pilgrimage to Mecca, Saudi Arabia). |
| 5. Jamadir-awal | |
| 6. Jamadir-akhir | |
| 7. Rejab | |
| 8. Shaaban | |
- 278 **Kurang**
Tentu boleh, jam tangan saya menunjukkan kurang lima belas minit

pukul dua. *Certainly, my watch says (less) fifteen minutes to two (o'clock).*

This is the standard way of indicating minutes to the hour. Notice that in this case the minutes precede the hour whereas in the case of half hours, quarter hours and minutes past the hour, it is the hour which comes first, followed by the minutes, e.g.

pukul lima setengah petang *five thirty in the evening.*

pukul lima suku petang *quarter past five in the evening.*

pukul lima sepuluh minit petang *ten minutes past five in the evening.*

279 a.m. and p.m. in Bahasa Malaysia

The hour of the day is specifically indicated by the use of the words pagi and petang, as a.m. and p.m. are used in English.

PELAJARAN DUAPULUH SATU (21)

Wang Singapura dan Malaysia

280 Jika, anda, awak, engkau and kamu

Jika anda pergi ke Singapura . . . *If you go to Singapore . . .*

Anda here means *you* in an impersonal manner. Tuan is a politer word.

Awak is also used and is more respectful than engkau.

Engkau is used by a superior to a subordinate or one of equal status.

Awak and kamu can be used singularly as well as plurally. Kamu: *you* is used (abbreviated to *mu*) only by close associates or close friends.

281 Mata and derivatives

Matawang: *currency*; mata: literally, *eye*; wang: *money*.

Some words coined from the word mata are:

matajarum: *the eye of a needle*; mataikan: *a wart*; mataair: *a spring*; the source of a river; matapisau: *the blade of a knife*; mata-mata gelap: *a detective*; mataangin: *the points of a compass*; matabenda: *valuable things like jewels*.

282 Kedua and kedua-kedua

Kedua-kedua: *both*, but kedua: *second* (ordinal number).

283 Meskipun

Meskipun pada mulanya agak membingungkan, tetapi dengan cepat . . . *Although at the start it may be confusing, but quickly . . .*

Meskipun has a number of synonyms including: *sungguhpun*, *walaupun*, *biarpun*.

284 Malaysian currency

Wang-wang: *money or currencies*; Duit tembaga: *copper money*; Bernilai: *to have value*; Siling: *small silver, coins*.

285 Berharga

Jika and membeli stem berharga tujuh puluh lima sen.

If you buy stamps worth 75 cents.

Here we have the combination of the *me* prefix with the root word *beli* and *ber* prefix with the root word *harga*: *price*.

286 Akan kembalikan

Dia akan kembalikan kepada anda. *He will give back to you.*

PELAJARAN DUAPULUH DUA (22)

Di bank

287 Order of words in a sentence

Boleh saya tukar sedikit wang? *Can I change some money?*

In Bahasa Malaysia the order of words is roughly the same as English.

The subject is followed by the verb and the object.

A word receives emphasis by its position in the sentence. Often the object is brought to the beginning of a sentence for this reason.

Dia saya panggil. *I called him.* (Literally, *Him I called*).

The subject must come immediately before or after the verb. Therefore when two pronouns precede a verb, the first is the object, the second the subject.

An auxiliary verb is often placed before the main verb. It can also be placed (in matters of style) before the subject.

(a) Sudah ia datang. *He has come.*

(b) Boleh saya buat. *I can do it.*

An adverbial phrase of time usually precedes the verb, e.g.

Tiga tahun saya tinggal di sini. *I lived here for three years.*

Ada, as a verb of existence, usually precedes its subject, e.g. Ada lima buah buku di atas meja. *There are five books on the table.*

288 Negara and negeri

The word *negara* now means *independent country*, or *nation*, whereas *negeri* means *state*.

Dalam Malaysia ada 14 buah negeri. *In Malaysia there are 14 states.*

Malaysia ialah sebuah negara yang kaya. *Malaysia is a rich nation.*

289 Sudah

Sudah tentu boleh: *certainly*.

Sudah is often used for expressing the past and perfect tenses. As an auxiliary verb *sudah* means *over*, *done* and *finished*. e.g. Dia sudah datang: *He has come*. It is also used as a verb (*to complete*) in conjunction with the verb *habis* to mean *used up*, e.g. *completely finished*: sudah habis.

290 Nanti

Nanti sebentar: *Wait for a while*

- 291 **The use and misuse of ya**
Ya, tolong berikan saya sehelai wang kertas. *Yes, please give me a bank note.*
The direct affirmative ya: yes in answer to a query, is considered abrupt. It is generally avoided by the use of an abbreviated reply containing either the auxiliary or some other emphatic word from the question.
e.g. Mat sudah datang kah? *Has Mat come?* Sudah. *Yes, he has.*
- 292 **Kerani**
Kerani: clerk; kerani besar: chief clerk; kerani pos: postal clerk; kerani sementara: temporary clerk.
- 293 **Melalui**
Jika tuan mengirim cek melalui pos, cek itu hendaklah dipalang. *If you send a cheque through the post, the cheque should be crossed.*
Note mengirim from the root word kirim.

PELAJARAN DUAPULUH TIGA (23)

Perkhidmatan pos

- 294 **More classifiers**
Sebuah Pejabat Pos Besar terletak di bandar raya Kuala Lumpur. *The General Post Office is located in the city of Kuala Lumpur.*
Apart from buah, the commonest of classifiers, there are others of importance.
- | | |
|----------------|--|
| bentuk: | for rings and hooks. |
| utas: | for rope, chain and thread. |
| potong: | for slices of bread, cakes, meat, etc. |
| bidang: | for widths of cloth, mats, pieces of land, e.g. padi fields. |
| kuntum: | for flowers. |
| kaki: | for long stemmed flowers. |
| urat: | for thread. |
| pintu: | for houses. |
| patah: | for words, phrases and certain expressions. |
| butir or biji: | for things which are small and round, e.g. onion, coconut, seeds, etc. |
| tangkai: | for things such as flowers, leaves, fruits, etc. |
| rawan: | for fishing nets. |
| lembar: | for paper, thread, etc. |
| das: | for shots from a pistol, rifle, cannon etc. |
- 295 **Hendak**
Jika tuan hendak menghantar surat-surat biasa . . . *If you want to send ordinary letters . . .*
Hendak literally means want or desire, e.g. Wang hendak membuat

belanja sesen pun tiada. *There's not even a single cent to spend.*
Hendaklah may be used at the beginning of a sentence to express a polite command or wish. It is used in this sense in public notices. Here are some phrases formed with the word hendak.
hendak tak hendak: not willingly; hendaklah: must, should (its other meanings); hendaknya: actually; hendakpun: even though; kehendak hati: one's wishes or liking.

- 296 **Tidak perlu**
Tuan tidak perlu pergi ke pejabat pos. *It is not necessary for you to go to the post office.*
Literally tidak means no and not. The synonyms for tidak are tak, tiada and bukan. Tidak is commonly used in conversation before adjectives and verbs. In its simple direct form, tidak negates the whole statement. Even though bukan and tidak mean no, there is a distinction between them, e.g.
Adakah tidak bapa anda di rumah? *Is your father at home?*
Bukankah Ahmad yang membalung batu? *Was it not Ahmad who threw the stone?*
- 297 **Expressions using tidak**
Some expressions using tidak are:
tidak apa: it's all right, never mind; tidak apa-apa: it's nothing at all; tak dapat tidak: must, without fail; kalau tidak: otherwise, unless; baik tidaknya: the advantage and disadvantage of; dengan tidak (berkata): without (speaking).
- 298 **Peti and derivatives**
Peti surat: post box. Many new words may be formed with the word peti.
sebuah peti jenazah: a coffin; sebuah peti nyanyi: a record player; sebuah peti sejuk: a refrigerator; sebuah peti besi: an iron safe.
- 299 **Possession in Bahasa Malaysia**
Di rumah tuan tidak ada orang. *There is no one at your home.*
(a) Personal possession can be shown by using a pronoun after a noun as in the genitive case, e.g.
kawan saya: my friend; kereta dia: his car; Tuan mereka: their master;
(b) Another method of expressing possession is by placing two nouns one after another. The second of the two shows possession, e.g.
wang towkay: the towkay's money; pintu bilik: the door of the room; kereta Ahmad: Ahmad's car;
(c) Possession may also be shown by using nya, i.e. the third person pronoun, singular and plural, masculine, feminine and neuter, e.g.
Bapanya kaya: (His/her/their) father is rich.
Anjing ini cantik dan bulunya warna hitam. *The dog is beautiful and its fur is black.*
This is a safe way of expressing the English possessive adjectives, his, her, their, etc.

300 Punya

The word **punya** is used incorrectly in the bazaar language to express possession. The correct and incorrect ways of expressing possession are illustrated below:

Saya punya buku (incorrect) **Buku saya** (correct): *My book.*

Ahmad punya kawan (incorrect) **Kawan Ahmad** (correct): *Ahmad's friend.*

Mereka punya kepandaian (incorrect) **Kepandaian mereka** (correct): *Their cleverness.*

These incorrect expressions are given because you will hear them being used.

Punya can be used correctly when the English equivalent is a possessive pronoun, (*yours, mine, theirs, whose*) e.g.

Buku itu awak punya. *It's your book.*

Kereta itu saya punya. *It's my car.*

Wang itu mereka punya. *It's their money.*

Surat itu siapa punya? *Whose letter is it?*

PELAJARAN DUAPULUH EMPAT (24)

Di pejabat pos

301 Maaf

Maaf, tuan. *Please excuse me, sir.*

Maaf is used both in the spoken and written language.

302 The superlative yang and sekali

Bolehkah tuan tunjukkan saya di mana letaknya pejabat pos yang hampir sekali? *Can you show me the nearest post office?*

Similarly the superlative can be expressed as follows:

yang besar sekali: *the biggest*; **yang kotor sekali:** *the dirtiest*; **yang senang sekali:** *the easiest*; **yang mahal sekali:** *the dearest*.

303 The suffix 'kan'

The following uses of the suffix **kan** should be noted:

(a) It may be attached to any transitive verb without changing the original meaning, to mean *for* or *to cause*.

e.g. **Tutupkan saya tingkap itu.** *Close the window for me.*

Tolong ambikan saya buku itu. *Please fetch me that book.*

Tuliskan saya surat ini dengan cepat. *Please write this letter for me quickly.*

(b) To change intransitive verbs into transitive verbs, e.g.

Tiap-tiap malam saya tidurkan adik saya. *Every night I put my younger brother to sleep.*

Jangan dudukkan dia di atas katil. *Do not seat him on the bed.*

(c) To form causative verbs from nouns and adjectives to express the verb *make*, e.g.

Tolong besarkan lubang ini. *Please make this hole larger.*

Tolong pendekkan kayu ini. *Please shorten the stick.*

304 Orang and derivatives

Maaf tuan, saya tidak dapat menunjukkan jalan itu; saya sendiri pun orang dagang di sini.

Sorry sir, I can't show you the way; I am a foreigner here myself.

Orang: *a person.*

Many phrases have been formed from the word **orang**, e.g.

orang tahu: *everybody knows*; **orang kata:** *people say that*; **orang**

kaya: *a rich man, the rich*; **orang baru:** *a person new to this place*;

orang miskin: *a poor man, the poor*; **orang ramai:** *the public*; **orang**

putih: *an Englishman, a European, Europeans.*

305 The preposition 'ke'

Ke pejabat pos yang hampir sekali: *To the nearest post office.*

Ke is a preposition of place. It cannot stand alone and must be attached to the word which follows it. When the following word is not a place word, it is replaced by **kepada**, e.g. **kepada Ahmad:** *to Ahmad*. Sometimes **kepada** is shortened to **pada**. When **ke** replaces **di** it expresses MOTION TOWARDS and is usually rendered by the word *to*.

Saya pergi ke Singapura. *I am going to Singapore.*

306 Prepositions of place.

Ya, ada sebuah pejabat pos di Jalan Raja. *Yes, there is a post office at Jalan Raja.*

Di is used with nouns, e.g. **di Perak:** *in Perak*, **di jalan itu:** *at the road*; it is also used with adverbs, e.g. **di sini, di situ, di sana** and nouns of position such as **di atas:** *on top* and **di bawah:** *at the bottom*.

Di and **pada** both mean *at*. But **di** only means *at* (within the precincts of); **pada** means *at* (before words other than nouns of place). It may also mean *on, in, and according to*.

307 Common prepositions

Here are some common prepositions or words used prepositionally in daily life.

dengan: *with* (used as *by* and *and*)

daripada: *than* (after a comparative)

hampir/dekat: *near* (normally used with **dengan**)

sekeliling: *around*

tentang: *concerning, about*

bertentang dengan: *opposite to* (used often with **dengan**)

hingga/sampai: *until, up to, as far as*

sebelum: *before*

lepas/setelah/kemudian: *after*

bagi/untuk: *for*

selama: *for duration of time; during*

sebab: *because*

oleh: *by* (agent); *because of*

hanya: *only, except*

melainkan: *except, but* (after a negative)

di: *at*

ke: *to*

di atas: *on; at the top*

di bawah: *under; at the bottom*

di belakang: *behind*

di antara: *between*

dari: *from*

antara: *among*

dalam: *in*

hingga: *till*

308 Verbs not requiring prepositions

The student should not rely totally on vocabularies for the translation of English prepositions into Bahasa Malaysia. Many English prepositional verbs are rendered by Bahasa Malaysia verbs which require no preposition, e.g. **naik**: *to go up, to come up*; **masuk**: *to come in, to go in*; **turun**: *to go down, to come down*; **keluar**: *to go out*; **minta**: *to ask for*; **nantikan**: *to wait for*; **masukkan**: *to put in*.

PELAJARAN DUAPULUH LIMA (25)

Pelayaran

309 More of the prefix 'me'

Menggunakan: *to use*. **Meng** is the prefix, **guna** the root word and **kan** the suffix. In an earlier lesson we learnt how to use the prefix **me**. In this lesson we shall note its different uses.

- (a) When affixed to a verb the prefix **me** indicates that work is being done or an action is taking place. Such an action is implied by the root word, e.g.

Saya menulis surat (*the task of writing*). *I am writing a letter.*

Dia membaca buku cerita (*the act of reading*). *He is reading a story book.*

- (b) When **me** is joined to the names of foodstuffs, it implies that the food is cooked or has been prepared.

Hari ini emak saya menggulai ikan. *Today, my mother made fish curry.*

Menggoreng adalah kerja yang senang (*to prepare food with liquid curry*). *Frying (food) is simple work.*

- (c) When **me** is affixed to a noun, the noun becomes a verb, e.g.

Di panggung wayang kita tidak boleh merokok (*to smoke cigarettes*). *In the cinema we cannot smoke cigarettes.*

Membukukan karangan-karangan itu mengambil masa yang panjang. *To bind the essays into a book-form will take a long time.*

- (d) **Me** can indicate that an object or apparatus is being utilised, e.g.

Guru akan merotan budak-budak yang nakal (*to beat with a cane*). *The teacher will cane naughty boys.*

Memahat papan ini susah (*to use a chisel or gouge*). *Chiselling this plank is difficult.*

- (e) With certain words **me** indicates direction; it implies the act of moving towards that direction, e.g.

Kalau awak hendak menyeberang jalan itu, gunakanlah jejatas (*to cross*). *If you want to cross the road, use the overhead bridge.*

- (f) **Me** is used in a sentence in the active voice, e.g.

Dia memukul budak itu (*the act of beating*). *He beats the boy.*

310 Kerana, sebab, and oleh sebab

Tetapi sebahagian besar orang suka mengembara dengan menaiki

keretapi kerana keretapi cepat. *But a large number of people like to travel by train because it is fast.*

The following words may be used for expressing the conjunction *because* in Bahasa Malaysia: **kerana**, **sebab**, **oleh sebab** and **oleh itu**. At times **kerana** and **sebab** occur with the words **oleh itu** in front of them. The words **oleh itu** do not change.

Dia selalu menipu orang; sebab itu orang tidak percaya lagi padanya. *He often deceives people; because of this they don't believe him any more.*

Dia ditangkap kerana mencuri. *He was taken into custody because of theft.*

311 Jalan and berjalan

Beberapa orang penumpang kelihatan keluar, yang lain berjalan menuju masuk. *Several passengers are getting out, others are getting in.* Strictly speaking **jalan** is a noun meaning *road* or *way*. The correct verb form is **berjalan**. The student is advised to use **jalan** as a noun and **berjalan** as the corresponding verb.

312 The prefix 'ber' (continuous action)

dan yang lainnya duduk berbual-bual: *and others sit chatting to each other.*

Here the prefix **ber**, although reflexive in character, also indicates continuous action.

PELAJARAN DUAPULUH ENAM (26)

Di stesyen keretapi

313 Tolong

Poter, tolong angkat beg-beg pakaian saya. *Porter, please carry my luggage.*

314 The parts of speech

The five parts of speech are referred to in Bahasa Malaysia by the following words.

nama: *noun*; **perbuatan**: *verb*; **sifatnama dan sifatkata**: *adjective and adverb*; **sendinama dan sendikata**: *preposition and conjunction*; **seruan**: *exclamation*.

315 Angkat and berangkat

In this lesson we have the root word **angkat**.

Poter tolong angkat beg-beg pakaian saya. *Porter, please carry my luggage.*

Also the verb appears with the **ber** prefix.

Keretapi ini akan berangkat lebih kurang sepuluh minit lagi. *The train will move off in about ten minutes.*

Berangkat creates the fanciful idea of a train picking itself up and

moving off. **Berangkat** appears frequently in Malay literature, where a Raja does not walk, but (**berangkat**) moves off majestically.

316 Lah and berhati-hati

Tuan hendaklah berhati-hati. *You should take care.*

The suffix **lah** has two main functions:

It emphasises a word at the beginning of a clause.

Hilanglah duit saya. *I lost my money.*

It makes an order less peremptory in commands and prohibitions.

Janganlah bising. *Please do not make a noise.*

317 Yang

Pelantar yang mana? *Which platform is it?*

Yang corresponds to the English relative pronouns *who*, *which* and *that*.

318 Di as preposition of place

Tuan dijangka tiba di Kuala Lumpur lebih kurang jam tujuh suku pagi. *You are due to arrive in Kuala Lumpur at 7.15 a.m.*

Di is a place preposition which may be translated by the words *in* or *at*.

319 Jangan sampai

Baik-baik tuan, jangan sampai tuan ketinggalan keretapi. *Be careful sir, do not miss the train.*

320 Kelak

Saya akan bertukar keretapi lain kelak? *Must I change trains later?*

Kelak: *later, in the future, afterwards* appears more in the written form than in conversation.

321 Jangka and jangkanya

Tuan dijangka tiba di Kuala Lumpur. *You are expected to arrive in Kuala Lumpur.*

jangka: *to measure, assess, guess.*

jangkanya: *it is estimated that . . .*

322 Hampir and berhampiran dengan

Hampir meaning *near* or *close to* is usually followed by **dengan** as is **berhampiran** with the same meaning.

. . . tempat duduk berhampiran dengan kereta bufe: . . . *a place situated close to the buffet car.*

323 Letakkan di atas and giving instructions/orders

Beg kecil ini letakkan di atas para-para barang. *Place this small bag on top of the luggage rack.*

There are many ways of giving orders in Bahasa Malaysia.

The simplest way to do so is to use the verb without any affixes.

pergi: *go*; buat ini: *do this*; pergi sana: *go there*; Bawa barang itu ke sini. *Bring that thing here.*

The negative *do not* is formed by placing **jangan** before the verb.

Jangan buat itu. *Don't do it*; Jangan beri dia. *Don't give him*; Jangan minum. *Don't drink*; Jangan datang petang ini. *Don't come this afternoon.*

324 Lah

To soften a command, **lah** is used.

Pergilah. *Do go away.*

Marilah ke pejabat saya. *Do come to my office.*

Janganlah lambat. *Don't be late.*

325 Baik

It is politer still when the word **baik** is used with the verb. The negative of this would be **baik jangan**.

Baik awak balik. *You'd better go home.*

Baik jangan buat kerja ini. *You'd better not to do this work.*

326 Marilah kita

A friendly way of giving orders like the English *come on, let's do such and such* is by using **marilah kita**.

Marilah kita belajar Bahasa Malaysia. *Let's learn Bahasa Malaysia.*

327 Boleh

The politest way of giving orders is to use **boleh** which literally means *can*.

Boleh belikan saya rokok. *Please buy me cigarettes.*

Boleh awak datang esok. *Can you please come tomorrow.*

328 Tak payah

Tak payah: *There is no need to.*

It is a polite way of telling or asking someone not to do something.

Tak payah datang esok. *There's no need (for you) to come tomorrow.*

Tak payah ke sana. *There's no need (for you) to go there.*

PELAJARAN DUAPULUH TUJUH (27)

Berlayar dengan kapal dan kapalterbang.

329 Adjectives and adverbs

Words which qualify nouns, pronouns and verbs are divided into two groups, **sifatnama** or **rupanama**: *adjectives*; **sifatkata** or **rupakata**: *adverbs*.

Cantik means *beautiful* and it is an adjective.

Adjectives are words which qualify a noun or other substantive e.g. **besar**: *big*; **panjang**: *long, tall*; **baik**: *good*; **manis**: *sweet*.

In Bahasa Malaysia adjectival phrases may be formed by attaching affixes to VERBAL ROOTS.

Nasi berkuah: *rice with gravy*

Menyinga: *like a lion*

Pintu tertutup: *a closed door*

Dia kelaparan: *he is starving*

Besides adjectival roots, e.g. **tua**: *old*, **muda**: *young*, **senang**: *easy*, there are INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES e.g. **semua**: *all*, **lain**: *other*, **beberapa**: *some*, **banyak**: *many*, **cukup**: *enough*.

There are also adjectives for expressing degrees of comparison e.g.

lebih besar: *greater*, besar sekali: *the greatest*.
Adverbs are words which modify a verb, adjective or other adverbs
e.g. lambat: *slow*, jarang: *rare*, suka: *like*, selalu: *always*, baru: *new* etc.

- 330 **Belayar**
Belayar pergi ke Perth. *Sail to Perth.*
Belayar means *to sail* and has the prefix *be*.
- 331 **Salah and derivatives**
Dalam salah sebuah kapal besar . . .
In one of the big ships . . .
Many useful phrases have been formed by the use of the word **salah**.
salah adat: *to infringe custom*; salah kira: *inaccurate calculations*;
salah ambil: *taken wrongly*; salah bantal: *to have a stiff neck*; apa
salahnya?: *what's wrong about it?*; salah faham: *misunderstand*;
orang salah: *the accused*.
- 332 **Nampaknya and impersonal expressions**
Nampaknya kawasan kapal itu sangat besar. *It appears that the area of the ship is very great.*
Out of politeness Malays often use impersonal expressions in the written and spoken language to avoid asserting a personal opinion. These expressions are placed at the beginning or at the end of a sentence. nampaknya/khabarnya/rupanya: *apparently, according to reports, it appears that*; agaknya/rasanya: *apparently*.
- 333 **Bahawa/bahwa**
Tuan Rahman berkata bahawa dia pergi ke Singapura.
Mr. Rahman said that he would go to Singapore.
The word **bahawa** is being used nowadays with increasing frequency: and in direct and indirect speech is the equivalent of the English conjunction *that*. The original meanings of **bahawa** are *the facts are, the truth is* and *thus*.
- 334 **Betapa**
Betapa cantiknya kapal itu. *How pretty the ship is.* Betapa is a synonym for *bagaimana*.
- 335 **Manakala**
Manakala dilihat daripada jeti. *When it is seen from the jetty.*
manakala: *when, whenever*.

PELAJARAN DUAPULUH LAPAN (28)

Berlayar menaiki kapal

- 336 **The suffix 'i'**
Berlayar menaiki kapal: *To travel by ship*
The suffix *i* like the suffix **kan** is often used to form transitive verbs from other parts of speech. The suffix *i* is not used as freely as **kan** to form new words. Most of the verbs using this suffix are now recognised as fixed, independent words. Usually the suffix *i* implies that the action denoted by the verb takes place *in, on, or near* the thing (or person) denoted by the direct object. For example, from the intransitive verb **naik**: *to go up*, we get the corresponding transitive form **menaiki** which also means *to go up* but it must take an object, e.g. **menaiki kapal**. At times the suffix *i* is different in meaning from **kan** but often there is no difference.
The suffix *i* can change NOUNS, ADJECTIVES and INTRANSITIVE VERBS into TRANSITIVE VERBS.
Examples:
Dudukilah kerusi itu. *Sit on the chair.*
Dia kirim surat menerusi pos. *He despatched the letter through the post.*
Ahmad membaiki rumahnya. *Ahmad repairs his house.*
Ibu saya menyusui adik perempuan saya. *My mother feeds my younger sister with milk.*
- 337 **Anda**
Kalau anda hendak berlayar . . . *If you want to sail . . .*
Anda is an Indonesian word for *you*. Its use is now common and it is considered politer than **awak**.
- 338 **Sekiranya**
Sekiranya anda hendak berlayar. *In case you want to sail.*
Sekiranya is derived from the root word **kira** and means: *if by chance, in case*.
- 339 **Juga**
Membeli tiket dan juga . . . *To buy a ticket and also . . .*
Juga may be used in the following ways:
(a) To express exactness.
Hari ini juga saya pergi. *I'll go this very day.*
(b) To indicate a non-committal answer or be indefinite.
Sukakah awak membaca buku ini? *Would you like to read this book?*
Suka juga. *I suppose so.*
(c) To indicate a comparison.
Bapanya menasihatkan dia, tetapi dia begitu juga. *His father advised him, but he is just the same.*
(d) To indicate only one particular thing.
Apa juga dikatakan kepadanya, ia tidak mahu ikut. *No matter what is said, he does not wish to obey.*

- 340 **Jika**
 Jika saya merasa penat, saya duduk di dalam bilik . . . *If I feel tired, I will sit in the room . . .*
 The Bahasa Malaysia terms for preposition and conjunction are:
preposition: sendinama; conjunction: sendikata.
 Some prepositions are *di: at, kepada: to and daripada: from.*
Rumah saya di tepi laut. My house is by the sea.
Saya memberi buku itu kepada dia. I have the book for him.
Buah-buahan itu di beli daripada mereka. The fruits were bought from them.
 Here are some of the most frequently used conjunctions:
atau: or, jika: if, bahawa: that, supaya: so that, sebab: because, e.g.
Saya atau dia awak panggil? Are you calling me or him?

- 341 **Interjections**
Hai! Saya tidak pernah berlayar menaiki kapal. Huh! I have never sailed in a ship.
Seruan is the word for exclamations and interjections. They express emotions such as sadness, fear, joy and regret. Examples from Bahasa Malaysia include *aduh, wah, cheh, amboi, ayohai, hai, ha, ah and nah.* The following exclamations are derived from Arabic and other sources: *celaka, bangsat, Allah mak* etc.

- 342 **Akan and bahwa**
Kami di beri tahu bahwa kapal akan himpit di pangkalan. We were told that the ship will go alongside the pier.
Akan is at times used to single out the subject of a PASSIVE VERB. *Bahwa* means *that* (see note 333 *Bahawa/bahwa*). *Ditulis* oleh *Kassim akan butir-butir itu. Kassim wrote out the details.*
Akan can also be used like *untuk* to introduce a clause expressing purpose.
Minah pergi ke kedai untuk membeli garam. Minah went to the shop to buy salt.

PELAJARAN DUAPULUH SEMBILAN (29)

Di pusat bandar Kuala Lumpur

- 343 **Kecuali and melainkan**
Berbagai-bagai jenis barang kecuali barang-barang masakan . . . Many kinds of things except cooked food . . .
Kecuali is a conjunction which means *except*. The following expressions illustrate its usage:
tidak berkecuali: without exception; mengecualikan: to treat as an exception, exclude; negara-negara berkecuali: non-aligned nations.
Melainkan also means *except*, e.g. *melainkan dia: except him.*

- 344 **The suffix 'an'**
Minuman dan makanan. Drinks and food.
 Here the suffix *an* indicates that there is a variety of drinks and food and in each case converts a verb into a collective noun.
- 345 **Dan and tetapi**
Dan and *tetapi: but* are co-ordinating conjunctions. *Tetapi* is less used in Bahasa Malaysia than in English. It is frequently omitted as in the following example: *Saya pukul, tak kena juga. I hit him but missed.* *Dan* also is frequently omitted where in English we would use the word *and* e.g. *pergi mari: going and coming; bolak balik: backwards and forwards; pergi mendapat: go and get.* Alternative words such as *lalu, serta* and *langsung* are used to join sentences.

- 346 **Conjunctions**
 Here is a list of subordinating conjunctions for reference. Many of them are used only in the written form or in formal speeches.
- | | |
|---|---|
| <i>sebab (or oleh sebab)/kerana (or oleh kerana)/fasal (or pasal): because</i> | <i>jikalau tidak: if not, unless</i> |
| <i>hingga/sehingga/sampai: until</i> | <i>seperti/seumpama/seolah-olah: as, as if, like</i> |
| <i>sebelum: before</i> | <i>walaupun/sungguhpun/tetapi: even if, even though</i> |
| <i>lepas/sudah/setelah (or telah): after</i> | <i>sedangkan/meskipun: although</i> |
| <i>bila-bila/bila masa: whenever</i> | <i>supaya: so that</i> |
| <i>sementara/sedang/tengah: while</i> | <i>bahkan: in fact</i> |
| <i>serta/demi/setelah: as soon as, when</i> | <i>maka/pula: then</i> |
| <i>asalkan (colloquially asal): provided that</i> | <i>supaya jangan: in order that . . . not, lest</i> |
| <i>dengan syarat: on condition</i> | <i>nescaya: may be, it is most likely</i> |
| <i>bila (used in questions)/apabila (as a conjunction only)/apakala (as a conjunction only)/tatkala (as a conjunction only of past time) when</i> | <i>takut/takut kalau: for fear that, lest</i> |
| <i>jikalau/jika/kalau: if, whether</i> | <i>semoga: it is hoped, may</i> |

- Here is a list of co-ordinating conjunctions.
dan/lagi/serta/seraya/sambil: and
akan tetapi/tetapi: but
atau: or
samaada . . . atau: either . . . or
- 347 **Lagi**
Selain dari tempat ini ada lagi beberapa buah pusat . . . Other than this place, there are several other centres . . .
 Normally *lagi* is used to separate two attributive adjectives, e.g. *gambar yang elok lagi besar: a fine large picture.*
Lagi is also a co-ordinating conjunction to mean *and* or *moreover*, e.g. *tinggi lagi besar: tall and thin.*

- 348 **Repetition of words – sedap**
Sedap-sedap: *delicious* is a repetitive word which is used to stress intensity.
- 349 **Kakilima and derivatives of kaki**
Kakilima: *pavement*. The following phrases are formed with the word **kaki**.
kaki judi: *a habitual gambler*; **kaki perempuan:** *a womaniser*; **kaki botol:** *a habitual drinker*; **kaki ayam:** *someone without shoes*; **kaki tangan:** *assistants, staff*.

PELAJARAN TIGAPULUH (30)

Bertanya arah jalan

- 350 **Arah and derivatives**
Arah ke Jalan Mountbatten. *Towards Jalan Mountbatten.*
Arah also means *direction* or *course*. From this word we get **pengarah:** *a director* and **arahan:** *guidance, directions*.
- 351 **Boleh**
Sudah tentu boleh: *Certainly, of course*
This is a common phrase and is used in the spoken language in reply to a question.
- 352 **Ikut and derivatives**
Tuan ikut jalan ini . . . (Sir, you) follow this road . . .
A synonym of **ikut** is **turut**. Some common phrases formed from **ikut** are: **ikut angin:** *to accept public opinion (follow the wind)*; **ikut suka:** *one's wishes*; **seperti berikut:** *as follows*; **mengikuti:** *to participate*; **mengikut jejak:** *to follow the example of a predecessor*.
- 353 **Ya and common interjections**
Ya! is used for expressing agreement (**mengakan:** *to agree*).
Ah! is used for expressing dislike, disagreement.
Oh! is used for expressing disappointment.
Hai! is used for calling attention to something or for expressing joy, wonder or interrogation.
Aduh! is used for expressing pain or pity. Also **aduhai!** for sorrow.
Masakan! is used for expressing doubt.
Celaka! is used for expressing irritation or dissatisfaction.
Wah! is used for expressing surprise, astonishment or fear.
Kasihah! and **Sayang!** are used for expressing regret and pity.
Nah! is used in giving (*Here, take this!*)
Amboi! is used for expressing surprise.
Cis! is used for expressing hatred.
Allah mak! is used for expressing regret or when one has forgotten something.

- 354 **Jauhnya**
lebih-kurang suku batu jauhnya: *about (a distance of) a quarter of a mile*.
Notice this construction in the sentence.
- 355 **Kemudian and Jangan**
Tuan jalan lagi lebih-kurang suku batu jauhnya, kemudian belok ke kiri. *Go on about (a distance of) a quarter of a mile, then bear left.*
Kemudian means *after* or *afterwards* but often, as in this example, it is more translatable as *then* or *next*.
Jangan
tetapi jangan berdiri di tangga. *but don't stand on the steps.*
Note **supaya jangan** means *lest*.

PELAJARAN TIGAPULUH SATU (31)

Melawat ke Kuala Lumpur

- 356 **Iaitu and ialah**
Iaitu and **ialah** are apt to become confused but: **Kuala Lumpur ialah ibu Negeri Selangor.** *Kuala Lumpur is the capital of the State of Selangor.* **Ialah** may be rendered by any of the following verbs appropriate to the context: *is, are, was, were*. **Iaitu** is a different word that means: *which are, that is, as, i.e.* In this lesson: **Di sini terdapat dua buah stadium, iaitu Stadium Merdeka, dan Stadium Negara.** In English this could read: *Two stadiums which are Stadium Merdeka and Stadium Negara, or two stadiums i.e. Stadium Merdeka and Stadium Negara, or two stadiums Stadium Merdeka and Stadium Negara.*
Kain berguna kepada orang, iaitu dijadikan pakaian. *Cloth is useful to people, (that is) as it can be made into clothes, or (namely) it can be made . . .*
- 357 **Negara and negeri**
Negara: *nation*; **negeri:** *state*.
Negarawan: *statesman*.
- 358 **Bandar, pekan, kota**
Bandar Kuala Lumpur: *Kuala Lumpur town*.
The synonym for **bandar** is **kota:** *fort* or **pekan.** **bandaraya:** *city*; **perbandaran:** *town council*.
- 359 **Baru, baharu**
Baru is also spelt **baharu**. The syllable **ha** is often omitted in conversation and in formal language. Nowadays the use of **baru** is more common.
- 360 **The prefix 'pe'**
Pelancung-pelancung: *visitors*.

Many nouns are formed by adding the prefix **pe** to verbs and adjectives. The prefix **pe** brings about the same consonantal changes to the root word as the prefix **me**.

This prefix may be used in the following ways:-

(i) When the root word is a verb, **pe** denotes:

(a) the performer of the action.

lari: run **pelari: runner**

tulis: write **penulis: writer**

(b) the means by which an action is performed. In this case the root word may also be a noun.

hapus: eradicate **penghapus: eradicator**

garis: line **penggaris: ruler**

(ii) When the root word is a noun, **pe** denotes the person who works or lives at the place indicated in the root word, e.g.

laut: sea **pelaut: seaman**

kebun: garden **pekebun: gardener**

(iii) When the root word is an adjective, **pe** denotes:

(a) a person having a quality (often an abstract quality).

malas: lazy **pemalas: one who is lazy**

(b) what causes a person or another thing to have the quality indicated in the root word.

rosak: spoilt **perosak: destroyer, destructive agent**

sakit: sick or ill **penyakit: disease**

PELAJARAN TIGAPULUH DUA (32)

Bijih timah

361 Salah satu (salah sebuah)

Malaysia ialah salah sebuah negeri pengeksport bijih timah. Malaysia is one of the tin exporting countries.

Salah satu means *one of* and has the same meaning as **salah seorang**. However, **salah seorang** qualifies a PERSON while **salah sebuah** is generally used with THINGS as in the above context (according to the correct classifier for the noun).

362 Dengan menggunakan

Timah dikorek dengan menggunakan tiga cara. Tin is mined by the use of three methods.

menggunakan: to use.

363 Pancutan, the prefix 'pe' and suffix 'an'

Puncutan air: water hose

Besides the prefix **pe**, a great number of nouns are formed by adding the suffix **an** to the root word. Nouns can also be formed by the simultaneous use of the prefix **pe** and the suffix **an** especially with abstract nouns or nouns indicating place.

temu: to meet **pertemuan: meeting**

terbit: to publish **penerbitan: publication (of books)**

The combination of **per** + **an** is used instead of **pe** + **an** when the root word can take the prefix **ber**.

berjalan: to walk **perjalanan: journey**

berkumpul: to group **perkumpulan: gathering**

Nouns are also formed by the simultaneous use of the prefix **ke** and the suffix **an** as in the combination **ke** + **an**. It should be noted that **ke** does not bring about any initial letter changes to the root word as with the **pe** and **me** prefixes.

The combination of **ke** + **an** makes:

(a) abstract nouns.

bodoh: stupid

kebodohan: stupidity

curang: dishonest

kecurangan: dishonesty

(b) nouns indicating places.

diam: stay

kediaman: residence

raja: king

kerajaan: government

There are only three nouns with the prefix **ke**, i.e. **ketua: head**, **kehendak: wish**, and **kekasih: lover**.

364 The suffixes 'man', 'wan' and 'wati'

There are other rare nouns which use the suffixes **man**, **wan** and **wati**. They denote persons having the quality indicated in the root word. **Man** and **wan** are used for masculine and **wati** for feminine. A few examples are given below:

harta: wealth

hartawan: a wealthy man

seni: art

seniman: an artiste (seniwati: a female artiste)

peraga: a showy person

peragawati: a model, mannequin

365 Memproses

This is an example of taking an English word and changing it into one in Bahasa Malaysia. The English word *process* becomes phonically **proses** and then, to turn it into a transitive verb, the **me(m)** prefix is added. It may not be attractive, but it is at least a practical solution to manufacturing a new word.

PELAJARAN TIGAPULUH TIGA (33)

Di pusat membeli-belah

366 Pusat and derivatives

Pusat membeli-belah: Shopping centre.

Literally **pusat** means *the navel* but in this context it means *a centre* or *an institute* cf.

pusat belia: youth centre; pusat kesihatan: a health centre; pusat latihan: training centre; pusat pengajian: an institute of higher learning; pusat perusahaan: an industrial centre.

- 367 **Membeli-belah and repetitive words**
Membeli-belah means *shopping* or literally *buying things*.
 The slight change to the second word comes about through usage.
 Such combinations should be noted when seen or heard. Other examples include:
hina dina: common people, sanak-saudara: relatives, ulang alik: to and fro, gunung-ganang: mountainous, koyak-rabak: torn and tattered.
- 368 **Pun and pula**
Kemudian kami pun membeli-belah. *Next we went shopping.*
 Here **pun** emphasises the subject **kami**. (See note 99.)
 The word **pula** is also a balance word which may be rendered in English by the words *also, again* and *moreover*.
 Common uses of **pula**:
 It denotes repetition and comparison.
Mengapa pula dia tak datang hari ini? *Why has he not come today?*
 It shows a comparison which is contradictory.
Tadi kita minum kopi, sekarang minum teh pula. *Just now we drank coffee, now we are drinking tea.*
- 369 **Sedang**
Waktu saya sedang melihat-lihat . . . *While I was watching . . .*
 Generally **sedang** indicates the incompletive aspect (as in this example) of the verb that comes after it. Its synonyms are **masih** and **ketika**. It also means *medium in size* and *moderate or indifferent* as in answer to a question. *Is it good, bad or indifferent?*
- 370 **Forming adverbial phrases**
 There is no adverbial termination in Bahasa Malaysia (*ly* in English) but there are ways of forming adverbial phrases.
 The basic word is usually a noun or an adjective. It is frequently duplicated and combined with either **dengan, se** or **nya**.
dengan sebaik-baiknya: *perfectly, well; dengan sia-sia: in vain; dengan secukup-cukupnyanya: sufficiently; dengan sebenarnya: actually; selambat-lambatnya: at the very latest; dengan secepat mungkin: as quickly as possible; dengan mudahnya: easily; dengan segaranya: immediately; rupa-rupanya: seemingly.*
- 371 **Lebih-kurang, kira-kira, agaknya**
Lebih-kurang: *about, approximately* is used more in conversation than in writing. The synonyms are **kira-kira** and **agaknya**. The antonym is **tepat**.
- 372 **Tahun and derivatives**
Tahun: *year or period of twelve months*
 Examples:
tahun baru: *new year; tahun hadapan: next year; tahun panjang: a long year.*
- 373 **Dari satu . . . kesatu lain**
Saya melihat-lihat dari satu bahagian ke satu bahagian lain. *I looked*

from one assortment to another.

- 374 **Sudah lama tidak . . .**
Saya sudah lama tidak menemuinya. *It was (is) a long time since I met him (her).* Notice the construction which runs literally, *a long time I have not met him.*

PELAJARAN TIGAPULUH EMPAT (34)

Membeli-belah

- 375 **Sendiri**
Biarlah saya lihat sendiri. *Allow me to see (for) myself.*
 In this context **sendiri** is used to strengthen the subject like the English reflexive pronoun, *myself, himself*.
Sendiri can also be used to express possession.
Kita hendak pergi dengan kereta sendiri. *We are going in our own car.*
dengan sendirinya: *on its own accord, automatically.*
Tingkap itu terbuka dengan sendirinya. *The window opened of its own accord.*
- 376 **Barang-barang and repetition of words**
Barang-barang means *goods* or *articles*. Repetition of a root word may either be complete repetition or partial. In complete repetition, the whole word or the stem is repeated. In partial repetition only the first syllable of the word is repeated. Complete repetition of words usually indicates plurality, intensity or continuity. It may occur with nouns, verbs or adjectives. (See note 348.)
- 377 **Baiklah**
Baiklah, saya akan membelinya. *All right, I will buy it.*
Baiklah means *all right* and can also be a good translation for *O.K.* Notice the use of **akan** indicating intention.
- 378 **Sederhana, sedang**
Saya mahu beg sederhana besarnya. *I want a medium sized bag.*
Sederhana: *moderate, average, medium, simple* is in many instances a synonym for **sedang**.
- 379 **Economy in use of words**
 In villages you will find that the Malays economise with words, e.g. in this lesson:
kulit atau plastik? *leather or plastic?*
Biar saya lihat sendiri. The literal translation is: *Allow me see self.*
 Although verbs can be derived by a system of affixation through the use of **di, me, ber, pe, ter, kan** and **i**, we have already come across verbs without affixes. Words with affixes are used far more frequently in the written language than in day-to-day conversations.

380 Sila, silakan

Sila ikut saya. *Please follow me.* Sila: *please* is a politer word than marilah or tolong. The use of this word suggests humility and a helpful nature. Silakan puan. *Please do madam.* Silakan, silakanlah, silakanlah can all be used to mean *please* or indicate a polite request.

PELAJARAN TIGAPULUH LIMA (35)

Tukang jahit baju

381 Tadi and idiomatic expressions

Pagi tadi: *this morning*; tadi: *just now, recently, past*. It would be wrong if no mention were made of the Malay habit of using indirect allusive phrases, idiomatic expressions, maxims, metaphors, similes and proverbs. Colourful speech is common with the older generation of Malays who much appreciate the student who can quote a proverb on the appropriate occasion.

There are a number of idiomatic expressions centring around the word hati, e.g.

ada hati: *to have an intention*; besar hati: *proud of*; sakit hati: *jealous of*; senang hati: *happy*.

Proverbs, metaphors and maxims are used widely in letters, newspapers and essays. Picturesque phrases of this nature embody the spirit of the language and every effort should be made to use them. Malay equivalents for proverbs, similes, metaphors, and idiomatic expressions are given below.

proverbs: peribahasa; idiomatic expression: simpulan bahasa; similes and metaphors: perumpamaan yang memakai perbandingan; sayings: kata orang tua-tua; aphorisms: bidalan or pematik; colloquialism: kiasan.

There are many idiomatic expressions consisting of two words. The beginner is often at a loss as their meanings are seldom given in a dictionary. Some of the common ones are given below:

buta huruf: *illiterate*; telinga nipis: *sensitive*; cepat tangan: *given to stealing*; cakap angin: *rumour*; keras kepala: *obstinate*; kaki judi: *habitual gambler*; gila urat: *a flirt*; kaki botol: *a habitual drinker*; panjang tangan: *given to stealing*; tahi lalat: *a mole*; makan gaji: *work for wages*; manis mulut: *gentle talk*; nyawa ikan: *at the point of death*; anak dara: *a virgin, spinster*; anak tiri: *a step-child*.

382 Terpaksa and the Bahasa Malaysia verb

Saya terpaksa menunggu hingga tahun hadapan. *I have to wait till next year.*

terpaksa: *to have to*.

(a) Person and Number

In Bahasa Malaysia, the verb does not change in form to indicate person or number.

Kassim makan roti. *Kassim eats bread.* (third person singular)

Saya makan kuih. *I am eating cakes.* (first person singular)

Budak-budak itu makan nasi. *The children are eating rice.* (third person plural)

(b) Mood

There is no change in the form of the verb to show a change of mood.

Emaknya datang. *His mother came.* (indicative)

Sungguhpun ia datang. *Although he came.* (possible subjunctive)

Biar ia datang. *Let him come.* (imperative)

(c) Tense

The Bahasa Malaysia verbs can be in any tense.

Dia pergi: *He goes or is going, he went or was going; he will go.*

Tense can be indicated by one of a number of words which act as auxiliaries.

To show Present Tense

sedang/masih/tengah: *still, is*

To show Past Tense

telah: *has*; sudah: *have*; habis: *had*

To show Future Time

kelak/nanti/hendak/akan/mahu: *shall, will*

(d) Voice

In the Bahasa Malaysia verb, there is sometimes no clear distinction between the active voice and the passive voice. The simple root form of the verb is more often active than passive.

Ali menendang bola. *Ali kicks the ball.*

The passive is used in writing (and sometimes in the spoken language) by the use of di prefixed to the simple root form of the verb.

Bola ditendang oleh Ali. *The ball was kicked by Ali.*

The idiomatic passive form with di appears frequently in narrative literary passages and often in conversation and should be translated into English as the active voice. This sounds confusing but here are examples:

Ditutupnya pintu itu. *He shut the door.* Diambilnya surat-khabar. *He picked up a newspaper.* Diagakkan orang, Langkasuka tertletak di sebelah utara. *People thought Langkasuka was in the north.*

383 Dalam

Saya akan datang dalam masa dua minggu lagi

I shall come in two weeks' time. (Literally, *in time two weeks' more*).

Untuk mencuba baju itu . . . *For trying on the shirt . . .*

It is reiterated that in Bahasa Malaysia there is no article equivalent to the English *the* or *a*. To indicate a definite object the demonstratives *ini*: *this* and *itu*: *the* or *that* are used.

384 Nya

Beg tangan yang dibelinya. *The handbag which was bought.*

Basically *nya* is a pronoun for *ia* or *dia* and may be used for expressing the plural as well. It may therefore stand for *he, she, it* or *they* or any forms of those English words.

(a) *Nya* may be used for expressing the possessive pronoun meaning *his, her, its* or *their*.

Lim dan Ahmad membaca buku mereka bukunya. Lim and Ahmad read their books.

Tony sedang menulis surat kepada ayahnya. Tony is writing a letter to his father.

(b) *Nya* may also be the object of a verb.

Tadi saya melihatnya di pasar. Just now I saw him (or her or them) in the market.

(c) *Nya* is often added to other parts of speech, especially to verbs or adjectives to form a kind of noun (abstract or verbal).

Besarnya rumah itu! What a big house it is!

(d) *Nya* is used in constructions such as the following example where the order of the words appears to be reversed.

Rumah ini warnanya hitam. This house is black (in colour). (Literally: House this colour its (is) black.)

(e) *Nya* is used in the same way as *the*.

Semua tetamunya akan duduk di situ. All the guests will be seated there.

Selepas itu keretanya tiba, kami pun naiklah. Then the car came and we got in.

385 **Serba sedikit**
akan membuat serba sedikit pembetulan: *will carry out all sorts of improvements.*
serba: *all*.

386 **Tidak berjaya**
tetapi tidak berjaya: *but without success.*

PELAJARAN TIGAPULUH ENAM (36)

Menempah baju baru

387 **Muda**
Warnanya terlalu muda. *The colour is too light.*
Other meanings of *muda* are *young*, e.g. *orang muda: young person; kelapa muda: young (unripe) coconut; negara muda: a new State; malam masih muda: the night is still young.*

388 **Nampaknya**
Harga ini nampaknya lebih daripada harga yang saya jangkakan. *It appears that the price is more than I expected.*
The synonym for *nampaknya* is *rupa-rupanya*. *Nampak* by itself means *to see, behold* or *come into view*.

389 **Terlalu and the prefix 'ter'**
Jangan yang gelap dan tidak pula terlalu cerah. Not dark and also not too bright.

There are also adjectives formed by the prefix *ter* joined to verbal roots. They correspond to the English past participle. In Bahasa Malaysia this construction is regarded as an adjective as it denotes a state.

tingkap tertutup: closed window; Pencuri itu tergantung: The thief was hung.

390 The comparative and superlative degrees

There are a number of ways of expressing the comparative and the superlative degrees. The comparative degree may be dealt with in two ways:

(a) by the arrangement of words whereby the things or persons compared are positioned one after the other in antithesis. This method is used in the spoken language.

Buku, kertas, mahal buku. The book is more expensive than the paper.

Ahmad, Mamat, pandi Mamat. Between Ahmad and Mamat, Mamat is cleverer.

(b) by the use of *lebih: more* and *daripada: than*.

Buku lebih mahal daripada kertas. A book is more expensive than paper.

Mamat lebih pandai daripada Ahmad. Mamat is cleverer than Ahmad.

The superlative degree may be dealt with as follows:

(a) by the arrangement of words and the optional use of *yang* for emphasis.

Di antara buku, pensel dan pen, pen yang paling mahal. Of book, pencil and pen, pen is the most expensive.

Di antara Ahmad, Mamat, Ali, Ali yang paling pandai. Of Ahmad, Mamat, Ali, Ali is the cleverest.

(b) the prefix *ter* can be used with certain adjectives.

besar: big; lebih besar: bigger; terbesar: biggest; baik: good; lebih baik: better; terbaik: best.

(c) by the use of *yang* before the adjective and *sekali* after it.

yang besar sekali: the biggest

yang pandai sekali: the cleverest

yang mahal sekali: the most expensive.

Equality of degree may be expressed in two ways:

(a) by the arrangement of words with the repetition of the adjective.

Kayu ini berat, seberat besi. The wood is as heavy as iron.

Binatang itu besar, sebesar kereta saya. The animal is large, as large as my car.

(b) by the use of *se* (or *sama*) with *dengan*.

Pagar rumah dia setinggi pokok ini. The fence of his house is as high as this tree.

Ahmad sama tingginya dengan Mamat. Ahmad is as tall as Mamat.

Ahmad sama tingginya Mamat. *Ahmad is as tall as Mamat.*

Ascending and descending degrees

The words makin . . . makin or semakin . . . semakin can be used.
Makan tua, makin kaya/Semakin tua, semakin kaya. *The older he grows, the richer he becomes.*

Semakin malas, semakin miskin. *The lazier he grew, the poorer he became.*

Makin lama, makin jahat. *The older he grew, the more mischievous he became.*

391 Saiz

Saiz is derived from the English word *size* and means the same. Do not confuse it with sais which means *a groom* or *chauffeur*.

392 The suffix 'kan'. Making verbs from adjectives.

Notice the last but one sentence in this lesson and the use of the suffix kan. Kami akan pendekkan lebih kurang satu inci dan pinggangnya akan dikecilkan sedikit. *We'll shorten it about an inch and reduce the waist a little.*

PELAJARAN TIGAPULUH TUJUH (37)

Membeli buku

393 Compound verbs

- (a) The prefix of a compound verb is attached to the first element.
membabi-buta: *to act blindly*; berpegang tangan: *to hold hands*.
- (b) The prefix of a compound verb is attached to the first element and the suffix to the second.
menghancur-leburkan: *to destroy completely*; menyatu-padukan: *to unite*.

394 Compound adjectives

- (a) The combination of adjective and adjective. Both elements have the same meaning and are put together to form a compound adjective.
lemah-lembut: *soft and gentle*; hancur-lebur: *completely destroyed*.
- (b) The second element qualifies the first.
hijau tua: *dark green*; merah jambu: *pink (guava red)*.
- (c) A combination of adjective and noun.
kaki judi: *a habitual gambler*; senang hati: *happy*.

395 Masa

Pada masa ini: *at this moment*. Other useful synonyms for masa include tempoh, saat, waktu and ketika.

396 Seorang and useful indefinite pronouns

seorang: *a person or someone* segala, sekalian: *all*

tiap-tiap: *each*

masing-masing: *each one*

semua sekali: *everyone*

siapa-siapa: *whoever*

apa-apa: *whatever*

lain: *another*

397 Bangsa

Bangsa when used for people means *race*. When used with animals and fishes it means *species*. For other things we use the words jenis or macam, to translate *kind (species)*.

398 Ibu bapa

Ibu bapa means *parents* and it is a compound noun. Compound nouns usually consist of two different elements, both of which are for the most part root words. The two elements are sometimes joined together; sometimes they are separate words as in English, e.g. *bed-ridden, prime minister*. Compound nouns are the combination of NOUN + NOUN. Here are some interesting examples.

- (a) The elements are opposite in meaning to one another.
siang-malam: *night and day*; tua-muda: *old and young*.
- (b) The elements of similar species.
kerusi-meja: *tables and chairs*; sanak-saudara: *relatives*.
- (c) The first element is an attribute of the second.
lengan-baju: *sleeve (arm of shirt)*; tali sepatu/kasut: *shoe-lace*.
- (d) The combination of noun + adjective.
The second element qualifies the first.
orang tua: *parent*; orang rumah: *wife*; anak emas: *favourite child (golden child)*.
- (e) The combination of noun + verb.
The second element denotes the use or purpose of the first.
kertas tulis: *writing paper*; meja makan: *dining table*.

399 Yang mana

Yang mana tuan fikir bagus: *which you think are good*; yang mana: *which, where, how*; bagus: *good or fine*.

400 Bermacam-macam

Buku ini ada bermacam-macam. *These books are of assorted kinds.*

401 Sebagai

Buku ini sebagai bacaan. *This book, like reading.*
sebagai: *as if, like* (in the context of this lesson: *for*).

402 Nobel, teks, sistem.

Nobel teks and sistem are derived from the English words *novel, texts* and *system*.

403 Dapat

Sekarang saya dapat menguasai Bahasa Malaysia. *Now I know how to use Bahasa Malaysia.*

Menguasai is built up from kuasa meaning *power, strength, ability to do something*.

Dapat has a variety of meanings: *to be able, know how to, come across, find, receive, etc.*, according to context.

PELAJARAN TIGAPULUH LAPAN (38)

Tukang gunting dan pendandan rambut

404 Tua, muda

Tua atau muda means *young or old*. Tua-muda means *young and old*. In Bahasa Malaysia it is incorrect to say muda-tua. Similarly, for *dress* we say seluar-baju and not baju seluar; for *clothing*: kain baju and not baju kain.

Note the difference in meaning between the following pairs of words:

tua: *old*

tuah: *lucky*

paya: *swamp*

payah: *difficult*

sawa: *python*

sawah: *rice field*

raja: *king*

rajah: *plan, diagram*.

405 Memerlukan

Memerlukan: *necessary*. The prefix **me** and the suffix **kan** have been used to form a transitive verb. Transitive verbs are also formed from verbs with the prefix **me** and the suffix **i**. The following uses may be noted:

(a) (i) When the root word is a verb, the combination of **me** and **i** shows the occupation of a seat, a place or a position:
Komunis telah menduduki kampung ini. *The Communists have occupied the village.*

(ii) repetition of an action.

Suri menendangi kucingnya. *Suri kicked her cat.*

(b) (i) When the root word is a noun, **me** and **i** denote the disposal of the thing indicated in the root word:

Emak menyisiki ikan dengan pisau. *Mother degutted (took the inside from) the fish with a knife.*

(ii) the provision of the thing indicated in the root word.

Buruh itu menggentengi atap. *The labourer is laying tiles on the roof.*

406 Lelaki atau perempuan

lelaki atau perempuan: *lady or gentleman* BUT in Bahasa Malaysia *gentleman* comes first. Similarly speeches open with **Tuan-tuan**, **Encik-encik**, **Puan-puan**, i.e. addressing men first. See note 63.

407 Diri, sendiri

Mereka yang tidak bercukur sendiri. *Those who don't shave themselves.*

As explained earlier **sendiri** is used to strengthen the subject as in the English non-reflexive, *myself, himself, etc.*

Diri is used in the reflexive form and may be used for any person or number. It may, therefore, have a number of alternative translations.

Ah Chong telah membunuh diri. *Ah Chong has killed himself.*

If it is for any reason important to distinguish a person, then the suffixed short forms of the personal pronouns may be added, thus:

dirimu: *yourself or yourselves*; diriku: *myself*; dirinya: *himself, herself, oneself or themselves*.

Ia telah membunuh dirinya. *He has killed himself.*

Aku tidak akan menyerahkan diriku. *I will not surrender (my person).*

408 Alat

Menggunakan alat pencukur. *Use a razor.*

Alat is a useful word meaning *instrument, or piece of equipment*.

409 Membuang

Membuang masa: *to "throw away" time, i.e. waste.*

This is the idiomatic expression in use although there is a verb, **membazirkan**: *to waste*. The example below will give you an idea of its use.

Jangan membazirkan air. *Don't waste water.*

PELAJARAN TIGAPULUH SEMBILAN (39)

Di kedai gunting

410 Bergunting dan bercukur

Saya hendak bergunting dan bercukur. *I would like a haircut and shave.*

The use of **ber** here in the reflexive sense of *to be with haircut and shave* avoids a clumsy sentence construction using the **di** prefix or the **me** prefix where the literal translation would be *I would like to have my hair cut and be shaved by you* or *I would like you to cut my hair and shave me*.

411 The prefix 'di'

Dicuci dengan syampo. *Is cleaned with shampoo.*

The passive **di** with the simple root form of the verb may be used. The doer of the action in the sentence (the agent) is less important than the action that is stressed. The agent is therefore placed after the verb. Should the agent be a third person pronoun (*him, her, them*) it is rendered as **nya** after the verb. The preposition **oleh** is used for expressing the word *by*. It is placed after the verb and before the agent as shown in the following examples:

Ali diperiksa oleh doktor gigi. *Ali was treated by the dentist.*

Ayam itu dibunuh oleh Ahmad. *The chicken was killed by Ahmad.*

However, in **dicuci dengan syampo**: *is cleaned with shampoo* the agent is not a person but *shampoo* and the word **dengan**: *with* is used.

412 Jangan

Jangan terlalu pendek. *Don't (cut it) too short.*

Jangan is normally used on its own, e.g. **Jangan**: *Don't (do not do it)* or with another verb, but not with an adjective or adverb. In this context the word **gunting** is understood.

- 413 **Hendak gunting**
 Tuan hendak gunting pendekkah atau sedikit sahaja. *Would you like it short or just a little (off)?*

The word **gunting** means *scissors* and is a noun and as an active verb *to cut something with scissors* would be **menggunting**.

Hendak: *want* can also be used to indicate the future tense. Although **mahu** also means *to want*, it does not indicate the future tense, e.g. **Saya mahu melawat Perak**. *I want to visit Perak*.

Bila-bila and **time**.

Bolehlah dia datang bila-bila masa. *She can come any time*.

Waktu, masa, jam, kala, all refer to time but they can be used in different ways.

(a) **Waktu**: *a brief period* e.g. **Waktu dia mandi cuma enam minit sahaja**.

(b) **Masa** (time longer than a brief period), e.g. **Sekarang masa rehat**. *Now it is break time*.

(c) **Jam**: *hour* e.g. **Dia ada di sini selama tiga jam**.

414 **Berhati-hati**

Saya harap berhati-hati sedikit. *I hope you will be a little careful*.
berhati-hati: *careful, cautious or wary*.

415 **Wanita**

Wanita: *woman, female* is a synonym for **orang perempuan**, but is possibly more polite and literary. Hence **kewanitaan**: *womanhood*.

PELAJARAN EMPATPULUH (40)

Buah-buahan Malaysia

416 **Seperti and sebagai**

Buah-buahan seperti durian: *Fruit(s) like durians*

Seperti: *like, as if, according to*

Malays are fond of using metaphors and similes in their daily conversations and writing. These expressions often begin with words such as **seperti, sebagai, seumpama** and **macam**, e.g.

(a) **seperti cincin dengan permata**: *as fitting as the jewel and the ring encasing it*, i.e. when referring to a couple who match each other in appearance.

(b) **seperti api dalam sekam**: *like smouldering rice husk*, i.e. when referring to something burning slowly and unnoticed, or of smouldering anger.

(c) **seperti isi dengan kuku**: *as the flesh and the nail*, i.e. closely united.

(d) **seperti rusa masuk kampung**: *like a deer entering a village*, i.e. a person in a new experience.

(e) **seperti si buta baru celik**: *like a blind person regaining sight*, i.e. a person who has just obtained untold wealth.

(f) **sebagai anjing dengan kucing**: *like a cat and a dog*, i.e. two people who cannot agree.

417 **Some proverbs and maxims**

Among the older generation proverbs and maxims are much used and appreciated in Malaysia. Some of them are very easy to learn (and apt), e.g. **Buang garam ke dalam laut**: *Throw salt into the sea*, which is the Malay equivalent of *Taking coals to Newcastle* or *Throwing pearls before swine*. **Sedikit-sedikit jadi bukit**: *Little (by) little becomes a mountain*.

Here are one or two more:

(a) **Besar periuk besar keraknya**: *the bigger the pot, the greater the crust (sticking to it)*, i.e. *the greater the income, the greater the expenditure*.

(b) **Nasi sudah menjadi bubur**: *the rice has become porridge*, i.e. *a mistake that cannot be rectified*.

(c) **Diberi betis hendak paha**: *give a calf (of your leg) and want a thigh*, i.e. *give an inch and want an ell*.

(d) **Bahasa menunjukkan bengsa**: *manners show breeding*, i.e. *one is judged by one's behaviour*.

(e) **Lembu punya susu sapi punya nama**: *it's the cow's milk but the sapi gets the name*, i.e. *a person getting praise for someone else's efforts*.

In Bahasa Malaysia **ghee** is **minyak sapi**: *cow's oil*. But it is not referred to as **minyak lembu** (**lembu** being the word more in use for *cow*). Hence the proverb.

418 **Berpeluang**

Saya berpeluang dapat makan durian. *I had/took the opportunity to eat durians*.

Peluang: *opportunity or chance*, and **berpeluang**: *to have/take the opportunity*.

419 **Waktu**

See Note 413.

420 **Malaysian fruits**

Some of the fruits mentioned in this lesson are strange to Westerners, e.g. **durian, rambutan, langsung, manggis** and **cempedak**. Some of these are canned and exported as exotic fruit and are quite costly. But, if you are in Malaysia do not miss the opportunity of visiting the local open markets and tasting (and identifying) the fruits for yourself.

421 **Tersebut**

Ke negeri-negeri tersebut: *To the countries mentioned (before)*.

The root of the word is **sebut**: *to speak, say or mention*. The **ter** indicates completed action.

PELAJARAN EMPATPULUH SATU (41)

Sukan

- 422 Kebanyakan kawan saya suka bermain bolak sepak. *Most of my friends like to play football.*

Kebanyakan: *quantity, majority, most, mainly.*

The prefix *si* is frequently attached to names to indicate familiarity. It corresponds fairly well to the English words, *the fellow*. Here is an example which is applicable to the above:

Si Amin sangat suka bermain bola sepak. *That fellow Amin likes to play soccer.*

Si bodoh itu!: *that silly fellow!*

When attached to an adjective *si* forms a slightly contemptuous noun.

Si gemuk: *the fat one*; si kurus: *the skinny one.*

At times *si* acts as the English *the*. Perkataan-perkataan ini diarahkan kepada si pembacha. *These words are addressed to the reader.* *Si* can also refer to a person who possesses the thing denoted by the noun.

Mana si janggut itu?: *Where's the fellow with a beard?*

- 423 Tetapi

Saya suka bermain bola sepak tetapi saya lebih suka badminton. *I too like to play football but prefer badminton.*

The most common word for *but* is *tetapi*. Colloquially we say *tapi* for *tetapi*. Sometimes we use *akan tetapi*. This is a common practice with Indonesians. However, when *but* is used with a negative to denote a strong contrast, the usual construction is, *bukan... melainkan... e.g. Bukan Muthu melainkan John yang menutup tingkap itu. It wasn't Muthu but John who closed the window.*

Dia bukan ahli ubat melainkan ahli kimia. *He is not a pharmacist but a chemist.*

- 424 Dan, serta and sambil

Berenang dan tinju. *Swimming and boxing.*

As in English *dan* is a conjunction. At times *dan* and *lalu* are used synonymously. Ia membuka bukunya lalu dibacanya. *He opened his book and read it.* Serta is another synonym for *dan*. Dia serta budak itu pergi ke sana: *He and the boy went there.*

Sambil and lagi are often used instead of *dan* if the context permits it. Saya berjalan sambil membawa beg. *I walked and brought along my bag.* Dia pandai lagi cerdik pula. *He is clever and cunning.*

- 425 Bagaimana pula, ada juga and adapun

(a) Bagaimana pula dengan permainan dalam rumah? *How about indoor games?*

Bagaimana: *how* is a conjunctive or an interrogative adverb.

(b) Ya, ada juga permainan dalam rumah iaitu... *Yes, there are also indoor games namely...*

(c) Adapun is often used to introduce an explanatory statement. It may show a return to a subject after a brief digression or may

be concerned with a new topic.

Adapun bangunan itu dibuat oleh orang Melayu. *(Now) the building was built by the Malays.*

Adapun negeri itu di atas bukit. *(Now) this town was on a hill.*

- 426 Berpendapat and populer

Saya berpendapat perlumbaan kuda di sini tidak begitu populer sebagaimana di England. *I am of the opinion that horse racing here is not so popular as in England.*

Note: The word *populer* (taken from the English word), although easy to remember, would be more Malaysian in character if it were substituted by *digemari* or *disukai ramai*.

PELAJARAN EMPATPULUH DUA (42)

Bercuti di kampung

- 427 Jika... lah

Jika anda sungguh-sungguh ingin... cubalah anda pergi ke kampung. *If you really want... then try to go to a village.*

Notice the construction here beginning with *jika*: *if*. *Lah* is attached to the key verb as a suffix to give emphasis and is here translatable as *then*.

- 428 Kepunyaan

Sebuah ladang kepunyaan abang ipar kami. *An estate owned by our uncle. (Literally: An estate property (of) our uncle.)*

Notice the economy of words here and the balancing of words against each other.

- 429 Petani and place names

Kehidupan seorang petani. *The life (livelihood) of a farmer.*

There is also a town named *Sungei Petani*, which means literally *A farmer's river*. This is mentioned because a student may find an interesting and profitable way to spend a journey is to look up names of Malaysian towns and geographical terms on route, or idle away an hour with names from a map. To name one or two as starters: *Perak, Negeri, Sembilan, Pulau Pinang, Tanjung Malim, Sungei Besi, Batu Arang, Pasir Panjang* etc.

- 430 Supaya and sentiasa

Dia mesti menjaga dan membersihkan kebunnya supaya sentiasa bersih. *He must look after and clean his garden so that (it is) always clean.*

Similarly in this lesson there occurs: *Ayam Belanda* hendaklah sentiasa diberi makan supaya menjadi gemuk. *Turkeys should always be given food so that (they) will become fat.*

Note: *Ayam Belanda*: *turkey* (lit. *Dutch chicken*), relates to the

Dutch influence, when turkeys were probably introduced into Malaysia during the Dutch occupation of Malacca in the 18th century.

431 Segala and dengan (tangan)

Segala kerja-kerja di sawah atau ladang pada masa dahulu biasanya dilakukan dengan tangan. *All work in the ricefields or clearings in olden days was carried out usually by hand.*
segala: *all, whole*; dengan tangan: *by hand*.

432 Malah

Malah diangkut dengan lori. *Furthermore is/are carried by lorry.*
Malah: *rather, furthermore* is used more frequently in literature than conversation.

433 Some notes on writing letters in Bahasa Malaysia

Letter-writing in Bahasa Malaysia still retains a little of the old Malay style with its Arabic influence. There is a tendency to adopt the modern (English) style, although the traditional style and layout are still quite acceptable and both give pleasure and satisfaction to the addressee. An English style is adopted when applying for a job or in business correspondence, i.e. to comply with international business etiquette. Traditional letter-writing in Bahasa Malaysia takes into account the status of both writer and addressee of the letter. Love letters are often concluded in extremely decorative and poetic language, while letters to a king or a sultan have to be couched in courteous and dignified language, often involving Arabic terms. It is worth the trouble to learn those terms which are in current use. They are mainly used at the beginning and at the end of a letter. The body of the letter is written in the simplest and clearest language possible. The opening and closing phrases of the letter are usually statements of politeness or friendliness according to the relationship between the writer and the addressee. Here are some useful terms.

(a) Opening Terms

(i) **Saudaraku Rama** *My dear Rama,*

This is a common way of opening a letter to a close friend.

(ii) **Saudaraku yang di ingati . . .** *My very dear . . .*

This is a more affectionate form than the one given above.

(iii) **Tuan** *Dear Sir,*

The safest way to address someone officially is to use the word **tuan** all by itself. The feminine equivalent is **Puan** which corresponds to *Madam* or *Dear Madam*.

(b) Closing Terms

(i) **Dengan hormatnya:** *with due respect.*

(ii) **Yang benar:** *yours faithfully, yours sincerely.*

This phrase is ideal for ending official or friendly letters.

(c) Other Terms

Other forms of address are as follows:

(i) A friend or acquaintance is referred to as **saudara**.

(ii) An elder brother or sister is referred to as **kekanda**.

(iii) A younger brother or sister is referred to as **adinda** or **dinda**.

(iv) A mother or aunt is referred to as **bunda**.

(v) A father or uncle is referred to as **ayahanda**.

(vi) A son or daughter is referred to as **anakanda**.

(vii) A grandfather or grandmother is referred to as **nenda**.

(viii) Between lovers the girl is referred to as **adinda** and the man as **kekanda**.

NOTE:

(a) The correct form of address should be used.

(b) Do not use the 2nd person pronoun, such as **kamu, awak, engkau, kau**, etc. The addressee should be addressed by name (if he is a close friend) or by the use of his title, e.g. **Datuk, tuan, encik** etc.

(c) The letter could be concluded with one of the following polite endings:

sekian sahaja dahulu

disudahi surat ini dengan ucapan selamat

sekianlah di makalumkan

had inilah sahaja

(d) Write **yang benar, yang ikhlas** or **yang kasih** as required before the space for the signature.

Here is an example of a letter to a friend.

Kassim Bin Baba,
34, Jalan Hang Jebat,
Kuala Lumpur.

10 hb. Jun, 1984 *

Yang diingati saudaraku John di Kuala Lumpur, dengan selamatnya.

Saudara,

Sungguh lama saya tidak mendapat berita daripada saudara, barangkali saudara ada banyak urusan atau pun sibuk dengan kerja-kerja lain.

Saya menulis surat ini dengan hajat hendak melawat ke Kuala Lumpur dalam masa bercuti. Oleh itu bolehkah saudara menunggu saya di perhentian keretapi. Saya tidak berapa biasa dengan jalan-jalan di bandar Kuala Lumpur. Berkenaan dengan masa dan tarikh saya serahkan kepada saudara bila-bila masa yang sesuai bagi saudara.

Sekian sahaja dahulu, saya sudahi dengan ucapan salam bahagia kepada saudara dan seisi rumah.

Yang benar,

Kassim Baba

* Note: hb. is the abbreviation for *haribulan*.

PELAJARAN EMPATPULUH TIGA (43)

Pekerjaan di ladang

434 Pukul and kira

Pukul: *strike, stroke*. It refers to the striking of a gong by which the time of the day was announced by the police station in a small town in days gone by. The word also describes the action of beating someone. The following examples will indicate how this word is used for expressing time.

- (a) Pukul berapa sekarang? *What is the time now?*
- (b) Pukul lima petang saya pergi ke kedai. *At five (o'clock) in the evening I went to the shop.*
- (c) Esok pada pukul lapan malam saya akan berjumpa tuan. *I will meet you at eight o'clock tomorrow night.*

Kira: *reckon, calculate*. In its duplicated form *kira-kira*, it means *about* (i.e. *roughly*). It also means *accounts*. Other derivatives include:

- (a) *kira-kira pukul enam: about six o'clock.*
- (b) *jurukira: accountant* (the word *akauntan* is also used.)
- (c) *ilmu kira-kira: arithmetic.*

435 Pagi and malam

Enam pagi: *six o'clock in the morning*. The precise time of day is customarily indicated by the use of such words as *pagi* and *malam*. In the expression *enam pagi* we know that the time referred to is six o'clock in the morning and not in the evening. The effect of the use of *pagi* and *malam* is similar to the use of the English abbreviations, *a.m.* and *p.m.*

436 Pada

Pada musim buah. The word *pada* is used with expressions of time, even when a season is referred to as in the above expression. Here it can be rendered in English by the word *during*. *Pada* can mean *at*, *on* and *in*, according to the context. The following examples are relevant:

- (a) *pada musim buah: during/in the fruit season*
- (b) *pada masa itu: on that occasion*
- (c) *pada tarikh itu: at that date*
- (d) *pada fikiran saya: in my opinion*

437 Keadaan

Perubahan keadaan: *change in conditions*. Other connected expressions

include *keadaan baik: good condition, keadaan buruk: bad conditions*.

438 Beberapa and berapa

Beberapa and berapa are two different words. The former means *several* and the latter asks a question – *how many?*

- (a) *Beberapa orang budak nakal . . . Several naughty boys . . .*
- (b) *Berapa orang datang? How many people came?*

439 Bekerja

Bekerja is a combination of the prefix *ber* and the noun *kerja: work*. Note that the letter *r* is omitted in the verb *bekerja: to work*.

440 Pernah, tidak pernah and belum pernah

Pernah meaning *ever* is often used with the negatives, *tidak* and *belum* to express a query.

- (a) *Pernakah anda makan buah ini? Have you ever eaten this fruit?*
- (b) *Saya tidak pernah makan buah itu. I have never eaten that fruit.*

441 Sebagaimana juga dengan

Anda akan saksikan bahwa ada juga orang yang kaya dan miskin kerana berladang, sebagaimana juga dengan lain-lain pekerjaan. *You will agree (confess) that there are rich and poor landowners. It's just the same with other occupations.*

PELAJARAN EMPATPULUH EMPAT (44)

Di tepi pantai

442 Menaiki bas

Pergi ke sana dengan menaiki bas. *Go there by bus.* (*menaiki: to climb on*)

An alternative expression is *pergi dengan bas*.

443 Sebagai

The word *sebagai* may be rendered by the English equivalent *as*. It is a very useful word to learn as it lends flexibility to the language. Here are some examples.

Ahmad telah dilantik sebagai Pengurus. *Ahmad was appointed as the Manager.*

Dia telah dihantar ke Singapura, sebagai wakil syarikat kami. *He was sent to Singapore as our company's representative.*

444 Keadaan

Although the word *keadaan* is derived from the root word *ada: to have, there is* its meaning is quite different. It means *conditions*. The following translation will make this point clear.

Tuan dapat lihat keadaan di tepi pantai Port Dickson. *You can see the conditions at the beach in Port Dickson.*

- 445 Sangat and banyak**
Note the difference in the use of the adjectives *sangat*: *very* and *banyak*: *many*. There should be no difficulty with *sangat* and the use of *banyak* should be confined to the adjective *many*.
Kami sangat gembira (not banyak). We were very happy.
Ada banyak buku di atas meja. There are many books on the table.
- 446 Sepanjang**
Sepanjang perjalanan kami itu . . . The word originates from *panjang*: *long* and may be rendered in English by the words *throughout* and *along* as in these examples:
Sepanjang perjalanan kami itu . . .
Throughout our journey . . .
Ada beberapa rumah elok sepanjang jalan ini.
There are several beautiful houses along this road.
- 447 Merasa susah**
Anda tidak akan merasa susah untuk mendapatkan hotel. You won't experience difficulty in obtaining a hotel.
The root of *merasa* is *rasa*: *to feel*.
- 448 Menuju**
Seorang dari mereka sedang berlari menuju ke tepi laut. One from (among) them was running in the direction of the sea-shore.
- 449 Bosan and penat**
Jika anda merasa bosan dan penat dengan bandar Kuala Lumpur. If you feel bored and tired with Kuala Lumpur town.
- 450 Melambai-lambai**
daun-daun kelapa yang melambai-lambai: coconut fronds which flutter to and fro.
Here *melambai-lambai* means *to flutter to and fro* and the sound of the words has an onomatopoeic effect of suggesting the action.

PELAJARAN EMPATPULUH LIMA (45)

Perjalanan dengan motokar

- 451 Masa cuti and adverbial phrases of time**
Adverbial phrases such as *dalam masa cuti*: *in holiday time*, *tahun depan*: *next year*, etc. are placed at the beginning or at the end of sentences.
Tahun depan saya akan pergi ke Jepun. Next year I will go to Japan.
Adverbs and adverbial phrases of indefinite time are placed after the subject of the sentence or at the beginning of the sentences. The common ones are:
selalu *always* *jarang* *rarely*

tiba-tiba	suddenly	sebenar lagi	shortly
baru	just	baru-baru ini	recently
tadi	just now	dengan segera	immediately, at once.
sebenar	for a moment		

- 452 Sungguh and adverbs of degree**
Adverbs that express degree and belong to a statement are used either after the subject or at the beginning of the sentence.
- | | | | |
|--------------|------------|--------------|------------|
| pasti, tentu | certainly | hampir | nearly |
| sungguh | really | sangat, amat | very |
| barangkali | probably | sekali | together |
| nampaknya | apparently | terlalu | very, too |
| sebenarnya | actually | semuanya | completely |
| agak | rather | bukan main | extremely |
| hanya | only | | |
- 453 Adverbial phrases of manner**
Adverbial phrases of manner are formed from nouns/adjectives preceded by *dengan*, or from verbs preceded by *dengan* or *sambil*. They are used after the word they qualify.
Mereka semua menyanyi dengan gembira. They sang happily (with happiness).
- 454 Interrogative words**
In Bahasa Malaysia we often use 'interrogative words' either at the beginning or at the end of a question. Here are some common ones.
- | | | | |
|--------------|-------|-----------|----------------|
| siapa | who | bila | when (spoken) |
| apa | what | apabila | when (written) |
| mana | which | mana | where |
| bagaimana | how | ke mana | where to |
| mengapa | why | dari mana | from where |
| apa sebabnya | why | yang mana | which |
- 455 Cuba**
Awak cuba cari: (you) please search. In fact the word *cuba* means *try* but in the above sentence expresses a request politely. It can be rendered by the word *please*. It is a synonym for *tolong*.
- 456 Sebanyak**
In *sebanyak empatbelas gellen: fourteen gallons* the word *sebanyak* is used because quantity is expressed. Examples:
Sebanyak lima orang laki-laki datang. Five men came.
Saya makan sebanyak tiga biji manggis. I ate three mangosteens.
This is a construction which one does not use in English so that it is important to remember it.

PELAJARAN EMPATPULUH ENAM (46)

Perniagaan dan perusahaan

- 457 **Barang-barang**
Barang-barang: *things*.
- 458 **The article in Bahasa Malaysia.**
In Bahasa Malaysia we do not have articles that correspond with the English *a* and *the*. Instead we use *se* to number and *itu* and *ini* which are actually demonstratives. There are other words such as *yang*, *kaum*, *para* and *si* which are used in the form of an article before the nouns they define.
- 459 **Yang as an article**
Yang can be described as a relative pronoun and is often used to express the words, *who*, *that* and *which*. However do not translate *yang* as *that*, when it is used as a conjunction in English. The correct word to use would be *bahawa*. However *yang* may be used for denoting an individual or thing or a group of persons.
- Di berkata bahawa Ahmad telah meninggal dunia. *He said that Ahmad was dead.*
 - Yang kuat harus menolong yang lemah. *The strong (who are strong) should help the weak (who are weak).*
 - Yang is used as an indefinite article.
Ali minta yang lebih kecil. *Ali wants a smaller one.*
 - Yang is used as a definite article.
Ahmad yang tertua di sini. *Ahmad is the oldest here.*
 - Yang may be used with ordinal numbers, e.g.
Siapa yang kedua? *Who was the second?*
- 460 **Si as an article**
Example of *si* used as an article.
si sakit: the sick man or the patient; si kaya: the rich man.
- 461 **Kaum as an article**
Example of *kaum* used as an article.
kaum miskin: the poor
kaum cerdik pandai: the intellectuals
- 462 **Para as an article**
Example of *para* used as an article.
para orang tua: the parents; para hazirin: ladies and gentlemen
- 463 **Antara and derivatives**
Di antara barang-barang keluarannya. *Among the goods going out.*
antara: between, half-way; di antara: among;
tiada berapa lama antaranya: after a short interval;
berantara: having space between; mengantara: to mediate.
- 464 **Pasang and perlu**
Tempat memasang kereta: *a place for assembling cars.*

Here *pasang* is the root and means to *assemble*, but it is used in a variety of ways, e.g.

pasang ayer:	<i>the incoming tide</i>	pasang pakaian:	<i>outfit of clothes</i>
dua pasang kasut:	<i>two pairs of shoes</i>	pasang lampu:	<i>light the lamp</i>

Perlu

Barang-barang makanan yang perlu: *necessities of life*

yang perlu: *which are necessary.*

- 465 **Hubung**
Yang ada hubungan perdagangan dengan Malaysia. *Which have trade links with Malaysia.*
Hubung is the root word meaning *to join, unite, put together.*
- 466 **Kurang dengar**
Maaf, saya kurang dengar apa yang anda cakapkan. *I'm sorry, I can't hear clearly what you are saying.*
The use of *kurang* meaning *less*, or *not enough*, can be applied to other Malay words in a similar way, e.g. *kurang baik: not good enough.*

PELAJARAN EMPATPULUH TUJUH (47)

Doktor dan doktor gigi

- 467 **Jadi and kena**
The words *jadi: coming into existence* and *kena: to experience* are common but usually confined to the spoken language.
Ayahnya jadi penterjemah di pejabat itu. *His father works as a translator in the office.*
Ahmad kena pukul kerana ia jahat. *Ahmad was beaten because he was naughty.*
- 468 **The suffix 'lah'**
The suffix *lah* sometimes denotes an expression of defeat or dejection. Normally it is used with the word *apa*.
Apalah hendak dikata, nasi sudah menjadi bubur. *What can I say, the rice has become porridge (things have not turned out as expected).*
- 469 **Some common abbreviations of Bahasa Malaysian words**
In conversation abbreviated words are used:
- | | | | | | |
|-----|-----|--------|-----|-----|--------|
| mu | for | kamu | dah | for | sudah |
| kau | for | engkau | tak | for | tidak |
| ni | for | ini | nak | for | hendak |
| tu | for | itu | | | |

470 Di indicating the passive voice

Apart from its prepositional use to indicate location, **di** is used as the precedent of a verb:

dibawa: *was brought*; **dimakan:** *was eaten*; **ditulis:** *was written*; **dihitung:** *was calculated*; **ditendang:** *was kicked*.

The use of the prefix **di** as the precedent of a verb is shown by the following examples:

(a) To denote the passive voice.

Ayam itu dibunuh oleh adik saya. *The chicken was killed by my brother.*

(b) To give more emphasis or significance to a verb.

Diingatkannya saya supaya belajar sungguh-sungguh. *I was admonished by him to study diligently.*

(c) To indicate a verb, the performer of which action is not mentioned.

Baju-baju itu pun dijualkan kepada orang ramai. *The shirts were sold to the public.*

471 Direct and indirect speech

Bahasa Malaysia has no tenses and reported speech is not as complicated as in English. The verb in direct speech undergoes no change when converted to indirect speech. However the change in the person (first person to third person) should be noted. The clause is always introduced by the conjunction **bahawa:** *that*.

Dia berkata, "Saya sakit". *She/he said "I am ill".*

Dia berkata bahawa ia sakit. *She/he said that she/he was ill.*

Bahawa is usually left out when the introducing word of the clause is an interrogative word.

Orang itu menyoal pada ku, "Di mana rumah kamu?" *That man asked me, "Where do you live?"*

Orang itu menyoal di mana rumah ku. *That man asked where I lived.*

472 Imperatives

Imperatives are reported by verbs of command, e.g. **menyerah:** *to order*, **memerentahkan:** *to command*.

Pergilah! *Go!* Ia menyuruh saya pergi. *He ordered me to go.*

Requests are reported by verbs like **mempersilakan:** *to request*; **minta:** *to ask*. **Masuklah!** *Please come in!*

Ia mempersilakan kami. *He asked us to come in.*

473 Hendaklah and pergi berjumpa

Hendaklah tuan pergi berjumpa doktor. *You should go and see the doctor.*

Notice the position in the sentence of **hendaklah** and also note **pergi berjumpa**, *go and see (meet)*; the *and* in English is not translated.

474 Serta juga

Dada sebelah kanan saya luka serta juga kaki . . . *The right hand side of my chest was injured as well as . . .*

475 Yang harus

tidak ada apa-apa yang harus dikhuatirkan: *isn't anything (which is right) to be nervous about*.

Harus means *right* or *proper* and in the translation into English in this lesson these words can be ignored.

PELAJARAN EMPATPULUH LAPAN (48)

Radio dan talivisyen

476 Interrogative words in Bahasa Malaysia

Apa? *What?*

Apakah nama lorong itu?

Siapa? *Who?*

Siapa orang itu?

Berapa? *How many? How much?*

Berapa orang budak itu?

Di mana? *Where?*

Di mana dia tinggal?

Ke mana? *Where to?*

Ke mana awak pergi?

Bagaimana? *How?*

Bagaimana awak buat?

Bila? *When?*

Bila awak datang?

Adakah? *Is it?*

Adakah perkara ini betul?

Mengapa? *Why?*

Mengapa Ali datang?

Sudahkah?

Sudahkah awak makan? *Have you eaten (your meal)?*

477 Untuk

The word **untuk** may be translated into English by the words *to* or *for*. When it is used before a verb, the former meaning applies.

untuk membeli: *to buy*; **untuk membaca:** *to read*; **untuk mencari:** *to search*.

In all other cases, **untuk** can be safely translated by the word *for*.

untuk ini: *for this*; **untuk saya:** *for me*; **untuk Ali:** *for Ali*.

478 Lebih

The word **lebih** is placed before an adjective or adverb to denote the degree of comparison.

Pen saya lebih panjang daripada pensel itu. *My pen is longer than the pencil.*

- 479 **Tu and ni**
In spoken Bahasa Malaysia the word *itu*, if it functions as a modifier, is normally shortened to *tu*. Similarly *ini* may be shortened to *ni*.
- 480 **Beribu-ribu**
In the expression *beribu-ribu: thousands*, one of the uses of the prefix *ber* is apparent. It is used in similar expressions to state quantity, for example:
beratus-ratus: hundreds; berpuh-puluh: tens; berjuta-juta: millions.
- 481 **Penerimaan**
Penerimaan suaranya sangat baik. *The reception is very good.*
A word by word English translation is given to help you to appreciate the style of expression. It is literally, *the receipt of its voice is very good.*
- 482 **Membolehkan**
Membolehkan: to enable is derived from *boleh: can* and the former meaning is expressed in the words, *ia bukan hanya membolehkan kita mendengar syarahan . . . tetapi dapat melihat apa yang berlaku. not only enables us to hear the news . . . but to see what happened.*
- 483 **Hanya**
Saya perlu hanya memusing alat pemutar atau tekan sebuah butang. *I need only to turn a knob or press a button. hanya: only*
- 484 **Berbanding dengan**
Talvisyen saya modelnya agak lama berbanding dengan talvisyen andu. The model of my television is regarded as old in comparison with yours.
- 485 **Latihan and bagi**
Ini telah menjadi satu latihan telinga bagi saya.
This has become an oral exercise for me. latihan: exercise, practice

PELAJARAN EMPATPULUH SEMBILAN (49)

Tempat-tempat hiburan

- 486 **Hadapan and depan**
Depan is the shortened form of *hadapan*. In speech *depan* is the form normally used.
- 487 **Entah**
Entah is used in answer to a question when doubt is implied, e.g. *Di manakah adik perempuan awak? Entahlah, ke mana dia pergi. Where is your younger sister? I don't know where she has gone.*

- 488 **Baik sekali, sederhana**
Tempat duduknya yang baik sekali ialah di bahagian hadapan, yang sederhana di tengah. The best seats are those in the front section, the average ones in the centre.
sederhana: moderate, average, medium.
- 489 **Segar**
Udara yang segar adalah baik untuk kesihatan. Invigorating air is good for the health.
Segar also means *fit or healthy* (of people).
- 490 **Tunjuk di mana**
Tolong tunjukkan di mana tempat duduk kami. Please show (us) where we are seated.
Tunjuk is the root word meaning *to show*.
- 491 **Jangan**
Jangan: Don't. When it is intended to forbid someone from doing something, *jangan* should be placed before the verb.
- 492 **Sekali and paling**
Sekali is the word used to denote the highest degree of comparison. A similar word is *paling*.
budak yang tinggi sekali/budak yang paling tinggi: the tallest boy.
- 493 **Latar, sesuai and amat**
Pemandangan dan muzik latar belakang amat sesuai dengan jalan ceritanya. The scenery and background music fit in very well with the plot.
latar: background, level, colour; sesuai: suitable, harmonious, fitting, suitable.
Amat is a synonym for *sangat: very*.

PELAJARAN LIMAPULUH (50)

Perkembangan kesusasteraan Melayu

- 494 **Malay poetry**
Bahasa Malaysia can be appreciated by reading Malay poetry. Malay verses take different forms and are known as *pantun, syair, gurindam, seloka* and *sajak*. A few words about their characteristics may be of interest.
The *pantun* is a poem with the last two lines in a four-line stanza expressing the intended meaning. The first line rhymes with the third and the second with the fourth. In the *syair* all the four lines in the stanza rhyme. The *gurindam* is a proverbial maxim. This rugged and rhythmical verse is not necessarily in quatrains. The *seloka* is a quatrain consisting of four rhyming lines. It is usually sung. The *sajak* is

modern Bahasa Malaysia free verse, not necessarily in quatrains. **Syair** and **pantun** are two types of verses which are common; **sajak**, which is written in modern verse, is becoming increasingly popular. The **syair** is made up of four lines with the end words of the four lines rhyming. Some old tales were narrated in **syair** form and the reader of the **syair** usually sang the lines in a particular melody. The four lines are interrelated in meaning and the continuity of the story is preserved by the succession of verses. The story is concluded in the last verse. The **syair** was used for imparting ideas and advice as shown in the examples below.

(a) **Bangun tidur hendaklah pagi**
Segeralah kamu tuju ke perigi

Mandi serta menggosok gigi
Badan segar akal pun tinggi.

A Broad Translation
Rising from bed by early morning
And on to the well without dawdling

Bathing and brushing the teeth
Making a body healthy and the mind deep.

The last two lines of the **pantun** describe the feelings and thoughts described in the **pantun**.

(b) **Pisang emas dibawa belayar**
Masak sebiji di atas peti

Hutang emas dapat dibayar
Hutang budi dibawa mati.

A Broad Translation
Golden plantains taken sailing
One ripens on a chest without fading
A debt of gold can be repaid

A debt of kindness is carried to the grave.

This is a modern **pantun** and a man may quote it to express his gratitude for any generosity and kindness shown to him. The first two lines create a form of imagery and the last two a homespun saying. They should not be translated word by word but taken as a whole.

495 Tionghoa
Tionghoa is a term for *Chinese* which is considered rather politer than *Cina*.

496 Makin
Dengan ini, bahasa ini semakin bertambah kaya. *Through this the language will increase and grow rich.*

Makin is the root word meaning *increase, become more.*

Makin baik, makin kaya: *The better, the richer.*

INDEX (The numbers refer to the numbered sections.)

A			
abang	54	bahagian	14
abbreviations	469	baharu/baru	48,359
ada	69	bahawa/bahwa	333,342
ada juga	425	baik	325
adakah	35,69,118, 254	baik sekali	488
		baiklah	239,377
adalah	64	bandar	358
adapun	425	bangsa	397
ada yang	80	banyak	127,248,445
ada yang tidak	80	bapa	56
address – forms of	16,63,65	barang	169
adik	55	barang-barang	376,457
adjectives	2,94,329	barangkali	169,242
... compound	394	barang siapa	169
... demonstrative	3,256	beberapa	438
... order of	110	begitu	125,249
adverbial phrases	370,451,453	bekerja	439
adverbs	9,329	belakang	93
adverbs of degree	452	belas	265
agaknya	371	belayar	330
akan	221,286,342	benar	151,210,219
alat	200,408	ber prefix	24,75,92,112, 312,400,410
alu-alu	157		
a.m.	279	berapa	71,438
amat	151,493	berapa lama	176
ambil	204, 232	berapa panjang	176
an – suffix	73,129,134, 247,250,255, 344,363	berbanding dengan	484
		berbual-bual	164
anak laki-laki	66	berdiri	74
anda	63,280,337	berhadapan	113
angkat	229,315	berharga	285
antara – derivatives	463	beribu-ribu	480
apa	72	berjabat	158
apa fasal	209	berjalan	311
apa khabar	167	berjumpa	170,473
apabila	106	berkahwin	146
arah – derivatives	350	bermacam-macam	400
article	5,458,459,460, 461,462	berpendapat	426
		berpeluang	418
atau	98	bersalam	158
awak	280	bersama-sama	184
		bertambah	173
B		bertentang	113
bagaimana	140,149	berumah-tangga	146
bagaimana pula	425	besar	107
bagi	195,485	besok	215,272
		betapa	334

betul	151	di preposition	29,89,306,
beza	142		318
biji	108	di sebelah	120
bila	106	di tengah-tengah	116
bila-bila	412	dia	70
boleh	37,327,351	direct speech	471
bosan	449	diri	407
buah	109	divisions of the day	269
buka	156	duduk	74
bukan	12,22	dulang	160
C			
cepat	244	E	
cerita	159	economy in use of	
cik	63	words	379
clothes	203	edar	163
comparison in		encik	63
Bahasa Malaysia	131,137,390	engkau	280
coefficients	84,108,109, 114,160,181, 251,294	English words in	
		Bahasa Malaysia	121,216,224, 230,365,391, 402,426
congratulations in		entah	487
Bahasa Malaysia	223	esok	272
conjunctions in		F	
Bahasa Malaysia	346	Nil	
copula in Bahasa		G	
Malaysia	4	gembira	144
cuaca	159	greetings in Bahasa	
cuba	257,455	Malaysia	16,32,185
D			
dalam	383	H	
dan	104,345,424	habis	289
dapat	193,226,246, 403	hadapan	93,243,486
dari	49,373	hampir	322
daripada	49,131,137	hanya	483
dates	262	harap	186
days of week	154,262,271	haribulan	267
dengan	75,362,410, 431	harus	475
dengar	155	hati	216,222,381
depan	154, 486	berhati-hati	316,414
dewan	241	menarik hati	216
di mana	40,91	hendak	128,238, 295,413
di passive voice		hisap	79
(prefix)	29,148,411, 470	hubung	465

I		ke prefix	134,227,250
i suffix	83,336,405	ke preposition	88,305
iaitu	356	keadaan	437,444
ialah	64,356	kebanyakan	422
idiomatic		kebun	87
expressions	381,409	kecuali	343
ikut – derivatives	352	kedai	205
imperatives	472	kedua	282
impersonal		kedua-duanya	150
expressions	332	kelak	320
indirect speech	471	kelmarin	215,275
ingin	259	keluarga	43
ini	3,28,256	kembalikan	286
instructions in		kemudian	355
Bahasa Malaysia	323	kena	467
interjections	341,353	kenal	221
interrogative words	454,476	kenalkan	171
isteri	43,57	berkenalkan	221
itu	3,28,256	kenapa	209
J		kepunyaan	202,428
jabat	211	kerana	310
jabatan	211	kerani	292
jadi	178,467	keretapi	60
jalan	311	kira	434
jam	111,264,413	kira-kira	371
jangan	319,323,355, 412,491	kita	96
jangka	321	kurang	278,466
jarang	217	L	
jauh	354	lagi	347
jendela	59	lah	36,227,324, 427,468
jika	280,340,427	lain	123
juga	90,132,339	laki-laki	44
juru	235	lalu	154
K		lama	374
kadang-kadang	217,266	lampu	112
kah	35,254	latar	493
kaki – derivatives	349	latihan	485
kami	96	lawatan	165
kamu	175,280	lebih	137,143,478
kan suffix	130,201,227, 303,392,405	lebih kurang	252,371
kasi	248	lelaki	44,406
kaum	461	letters in Bahasa	
kawasan	82	Malaysia	433
		lihat	105
		limabelas	152
		lusa	273

M		N	
maaf	301	nama	47
maafkan	168	nampak	105,332,220,338
mahu	128	nanti	290
majlis	218	naskhah	114
makan	177	negara	288,357
makin	496	negative tidak	12
malah	432	bukan	12
malam	215,435	negeri	288,357
Malay clothes	203	ni	479
Malay dishes	183	nouns – compound	398
Malaysian currency	284	numbers	11,101,261
Malaysian fruits	86,420	numbers – cardinal	189
Malaysian place		numeral coefficients	84
names	429	nya	67,122,220,384
Malaysian poetry	494		
manakala	335	O	
mangkuk	161	oleh sebab	310
manis	260	orang anak	45
mari kita	15,326	orang – derivatives	304
masa	395,413,451	orang gaji	182
masak	192	orang melayu	21
mata	281	orang-orang	233
matahari	139		
me prefix	39,83,119,138,139,156,201,227,309,405	P	
melainkan	343	pada	115,194,306,436
melalui	293	padam	197
melambai-lambai	450	pagi	435
memang	145	pagi-pagi	210
membolehkan	482	pak cik	175
membuang	409	paling	173,492
mempersilakan	184	pandai	138
mempunyai	68	pandu	240
menaiki	442	para	462
mendapati	226	parts of speech	314
mengapa	209	pasang	197,464
menonton	214	pasti	174
menuju	448	patut	234
merasa	447	payah	328
merdu	260	pe prefix	73,117,129,188,206,214,228,240,360,363
meskipun	283		
minggu	270	pejabat	211
minuman	247	pelajaran	117
muda	387,404		
musim	225		
Muslim day	276		
Muslim year	277		

S		S	
pelayan	253	sahaja	78,135
peluang	418	salah	331,361
peminat	133	sambil	61,424
penat	449	sampai	212
pendahuluan	13	sana sini	196
penerimaan	481	sangat	58,151,445
perempuan	406	satu	95,263
pergi	204,473	saya	6,18
perlu	296,464	se prefix	95,136,173,199,207,244
pernah	30,170,440	sebab	310
pernah belum	440	sebab apa	209
peti	298	sebagai	401,416,443
petinyani	26	sebagaimana	140,441
piringhitam	27	sebanyak	456
please	17,186	sebelah	179
p.m.	279	sebuah	25,160
populer	426	sedang	30,38,110,369,378
possession in		sedap	348
Bahasa Malaysia	299	sederhana	378,488
prefix ber	See under ber	sedia	163
prefix di	See under di (prefix)	sedikit	127,385
prefix ke	See under ke	segala	431
prefix me	See under me	segar	489
prefix pe	See under pe	sehelai	181
prefix se	See under se	sekali	52,302,492
prefix ter	See under ter	sekiranya	338
prepositions	307	selalu	266
pronouns – indefinite	396	selama	152
pronouns – personal	6,96	selamat	16
pronouns – possessive	7	seluruh	142
proverbs and maxims	417	semalam	215,274
puan	65	semua	126
pukul	434	sendiri	375,407
pula	99,368	sengaja	190
pun	99,132,368	senilukis	133
punya	202,300	sentiasa	430
pusat derivatives	366	sepanjang	199,446
		seperti	416
R		serba	385
ramai	77	serta	160,424
reduplication	31	serta juga	474
relatives	76	sesiapa pun	124
repetition	31,218,348,367,450,480	sesuai	493
rooms – house	85	shops	205
root words	219	si	422,460
rumah-rumah	81	siapa	35,62

siapapun	62	tertarek hati	147
siapa-siapa	62	tertua	51
sila	17,156,166, 186,257,380	terus	204
silakan	380	tetapi	345,423
suami	43	tetamu	162
sudah	30,237,289, 374	tiba	212
suffix an	73,129,134, 188,247,250, 255,344,363	tidak	103,297,386
suffix i	83,336,405	time in Bahasa Malaysia	208
suffix kan	130,201,303, 392	tinggal	97
suffix lah	227,316,468	tingkap	59
suffix man	364	tionghoa	495
suffix wan	364	tolong	186,257,313
suffix wati	364	tu	479
suka	128	tua	404
sungguh	151,452	tuan	63
supaya	430	tunjuk	490
superlative in Bahasa Malaysia	302,390,487	U	
susah	447	ubah	191
T		ucap	223
tadi	381	umur	46
tahu	141	untuk	268,477
tahun	372	urus	231,236
tak	103,172	V	
tak apa	103	verb	8,382
takkan	103	verb – compound	393
taman	87	verb – mood	382
tanya	33	verb not requiring preposition	308
telah	152	verb – root	8,382,405
tengah	38	verb – tense	8,180,382
tengok	105	verb – voice	8,382
tense in Bahasa Malaysia	8,180	W	
ter – prefix	42,100,155, 187,198,246, 389	waktu	115,213,412
tergantung	116	wanita	415
terimah kasih	167	week days	154,262,271
terlalu	389	word order	10,287
termasuk	102	words – abbreviations	469
termuda	50	words – incorrect use	248
terpaksa	382	Y	
tersebut	421	ya	34,353
	206	ya – misuse of	291
		ya – use of	291
		yang	41,53,302, 317,390,459
		yang mana	399

Malay Vocabulary

berterak	147	berterak	147
berterak	15	berterak	15
berterak	204	berterak	204
berterak	345,473	berterak	345,473
berterak	362	berterak	362
berterak	272	berterak	272
berterak	103,297,386	berterak	103,297,386
berterak	208	berterak	208
berterak	97	berterak	97
berterak	59	berterak	59
berterak	495	berterak	495
berterak	186,257,313	berterak	186,257,313
berterak	475	berterak	475
berterak	404	berterak	404
berterak	63	berterak	63
berterak	494	berterak	494
berterak	46	berterak	46
berterak	263,477	berterak	263,477
berterak	231,236	berterak	231,236
berterak	382	berterak	382
berterak	393	berterak	393
berterak	382	berterak	382
berterak	306	berterak	306
berterak	508,382,403	berterak	508,382,403
berterak	8,180,387	berterak	8,180,387
berterak	8,182	berterak	8,182
berterak	115,213,412	berterak	115,213,412
berterak	415	berterak	415
berterak	172,262,271	berterak	172,262,271
berterak	10,287	berterak	10,287
berterak	669	berterak	669
berterak	245	berterak	245
berterak	34,353	berterak	34,353
berterak	191	berterak	191
berterak	291	berterak	291
berterak	41,33,302	berterak	41,33,302
berterak	654,996,713	berterak	654,996,713
berterak	993	berterak	993

Note to the student

The numbers following the Malay words in the alphabetical vocabulary refer to the lesson (or lessons) in which the word first appears with a particular meaning (or meanings).

Malay Vocabulary

A

abang 1
 ada Int. 1
 adakah Int. 2
 adik 1
 adik-beradik 2
 adu 50
 agak 21
 agar-agar 11
 Ahad 20
 ahli 41
 air 9, 13
 air batu 17
 air teh 9
 ajaib 48
 akan 9
 akhirnya 27
 alamat 16
 alat 8, 13, 45
 alat bunyi-bunyian 8
 alat menghidup jentera 45
 alat pemungkah 27
 alat pemutar 48
 alat pencukur 13
 alat pencukur letrik 38
 alat penekan laju 45
 alat penukar gear 45
 alat penyejuk 45
 almari 13
 alur 44
 amalan 29
 aman 43
 ambil 12
 ambulan 47
 Amerika 22
 amat 29
 anak 1
 anak kunci 15
 anak lelaki saya 1
 anak perempuan saya 1
 anak saudara 9
 anak tangga 3, 27
 anda 2
 anggerik 3
 anggota 29
 anggota polis 29

anggur 17
 angin 45
 tekanan angin tayar 45
 angka 19
 angkasa 27
 angkat 23
 angkut 42
 angsa 42
 antara 6
 apa Int. 2
 apa khabar Int. 2
 apa-apa benda 6
 apabila 3, 5
 April 20
 arah 30
 arahan 27
 asal 50
 asing 22
 wang asing 22
 asli 36
 sutera asli 36
 atas Int. 1
 di atas Int. 1
 atau Int. 2
 ataupun 8
 ayam 12, 42
 reban ayam 42
 sop ayam 18
 ayam Belanda 42
 ayat 48

B

baca Int. 1, 50
 membaca Int. 1
 membaca sajak 50
 badan 13
 bagaimana 8
 bagi 10
 begitu 6
 bagus 10
 bahagi 39
 bahagian Int. 1, 4, 23
 bahan 46
 bahasa Int. 1
 Bahasa Malaysia Int. 1
 Bahasa Melayu Int. 1

baik Int. 2
 baik hati 24
 baju 3, 35
 baju kebaya pendek 35
 baju kot 35
 baju kurung 36
 baju mandi 20, 44
 baki 22
 bakul 13
 bal 45
 balang 17
 baldi pencedok 32
 balik 12, 40
 balut 47
 bandar 3
 bandarraya 15
 banding 7, 48
 berbanding 48
 bangku 5
 bangsa 16
 bangsawan 48
 bangun 13
 bangunan 12
 bantal 5
 bantal sandar 5
 bantuan 37
 banyak 3, 4
 kebanyakannya 3
 banyakkah 4
 bapa 1
 bapa saudara 10
 bapanya 1
 barang 13
 barang keluaran 46
 barang-barang diperbuat daripada besi 33
 barang-barang makanan dalam tin 33
 barangkali 10
 barangsiapa 48
 baris 49
 barisan 49
 baru 1
 bas 14
 basah 44
 basikal 25
 batang 3

batik 7
 batu 17, 30
 batubata 46
 batuk 47
 bayar 21, 30
 bayaran 39
 bayarannya 24
 bayarkan 16
 bawa 9
 bawah 1
 di bawah 1
 beberapa 3, 5
 beberapa tahun yang lalu 35
 bedak 13
 beg 15
 beg tangan 34
 begitu 6
 begitulah 17
 bekal 40
 bekas 4, 32
 bekerja 14
 belajar Int. 1
 belakang 3, 4
 di belakang 3
 belas 3
 belayar 25
 beli 3, 4
 belok 30
 belum 26
 benar 14
 pagi-pagi benar 14
 benar-benar 35
 benarkah? 14
 benci 16
 benda 6
 bengkel 46
 bentang 5
 ber- 1
 berada 12
 berangkat 25
 beranika 29
 beranika jenis 33
 beransur-ansur 27
 berapa 2
 berapa lama 10
 beras 46
 berasal 50
 beratur 25

berbagai-bagai 25
 berbatu-batu 42
 berbuah 40
 berbual 4
 berbual-bual 9
 bercampur 32
 bercerita 9
 bercucuk tanam 46
 bercukai 28
 barang-barang bercukai 28
 bercukur 13
 bercuti 33
 berdaftar 24
 berdiri 1
 berehat 28
 berenang 41
 bererti 19
 bergantung 22
 bergelombang 28
 bergerak 27
 bergunting 38
 bergunting rambut 38
 berhad 46
 berhampiran 17
 berharga 21
 berhati-hati 26, 39
 beri 4
 berikut 48
 berisi 9
 berita-berita 9
 beritahu 4, 30
 berjabat 9
 berjabat tangan 9
 berjalan 29
 berjam-jam 44
 berjaya 35
 tidak berjaya 35
 berjumpa 10, 47
 berkahwin 33
 berkembang 31
 berkenaan 8
 berkenalan 28
 berlabuh 28
 berlainan 17
 bermacam-macam 33
 bermutu 49
 bernafas 47
 bernilai 21

berpendapat 8
 berpengalaman 46
 berpergian 25
 bersalam 9
 bersama-sama 9
 bersedia 25
 berselang hari 38
 bersetuju 16
 bersiar-siar 28
 bersih 13
 bersin 47
 bersuntik 28
 bertali 19
 bertambah 10
 bertambah buruk 10
 bertangkai 5
 bertanya 30
 bertemasya 44
 bertemu 33
 bertolak 27
 bertugas 29
 berukuran 24
 berumah tangga 8
 berunding 44
 berus 13
 berwarna 23
 besar gunanya 32
 besi 33, 45
 besi penghalang depan 45
 besiwaja 46
 betapa 27
 betul 4
 biar 4
 biar saya 4
 biasa 11
 biasanya 14
 bicara 48
 pembicara 48
 bidang 41
 bijak 48
 biji 5
 bijih timah 32
 bil 18
 bila Int. 1
 bila-bila 15
 bilik 3, 4
 bilik belajarnya 7
 bilik jurumudi 27

bilik kelamin 16
 bilik makan 3, 4
 bilik mandi 3
 bilik mencuba 36
 bilik perseorangan 16
 bilik tetamu 3
 bilik tidur 3
 bilik tumpangan 5
 bina 41
 binaan 32
 binaan kayu 32
 binatang 42
 binatang ternakan 42
 biola 8
 biru 36
 bocor 45
 bola 41
 bola meja 41
 bola pingpong 41
 boleh Int. 1
 borang 16, 24
 bosan 44
 botol 13
 buah Int. 1, 3
 sebuah Int. 1
 buah-buahan 4
 pokok buah-buahan 3
 buat 2
 buatan 44
 dibuatnya 2
 bubuh 45
 budak 15
 budak hotel 15
 buka Int. 1, 9, 13, 36
 membuka 9
 terbuka Int. 1
 bukan Int. 1
 bukankah? 16
 bukit 31
 buku Int. 1
 buku-buku teks sekolah 37
 bulan 20
 bunga 3, 4
 bungkus 34
 bungkus 23
 bunyi 9
 berbunyi 9

bunyi-bunyian 8
 buruk 10, 35, 47
 seburuk 47
 busa 38
 butang 35, 48
 butir-butir 22
 butir-butir mengenai diri 22

C
 cadangan 46
 cahaya 5
 cahaya matahari 5
 cakap Int. 1
 bercakap Int. 1
 percakapan 48
 cantik 5
 cara 41
 cara Melayu 12
 cari 44
 mencari 44
 caskan 45
 cat 7
 cat minyak 7
 catur 41
 cawan 9
 cawangan 46
 cedera 47
 cek 22
 cek tunai 22
 cekap 27
 cenderong 41
 cepat Int. 1
 cerah 36
 cergas 44
 cerita 9
 cermin 13
 cinta 50
 pencinta 50
 cipta 48
 dicipta 48
 cium 9
 mencium 9
 cuaca 12
 cuba 5
 cuci 9
 cukai 28
 bercukai 28

cuma 18
 cuti 15

D
 dada 47
 daerah 7
 daftar 18
 daftar makanan 18
 dagang 40
 daging 42, 47
 dagu 38
 dalam 1, 50
 di dalam 4
 mendalam 50
 mendalami 50
 dam 41
 dan Int. 2
 dandan 39
 dapat 5, 12
 dapur 3, 4
 bilik dapur 4
 dari 27
 daripada 1
 dasar 32
 dasar kolam 32
 datang 9
 datuk 33
 daun 44
 dek 27
 dekat 1
 dengan 1
 dengar Int. 1
 mendengar Int. 1
 denyutan 47
 denyutan nadi 47
 depan 45
 dermaga 27
 dewan 3, 15
 di- Int. 1
 dia 1
 diabaikan 43
 diadakan 31
 dialih 32
 diambil 23
 dibaiki 19
 diberitahu 28
 dibersihkan 19
 dibina 12

dibuat 33
 dicabutnya 47
 dicipta 48
 dicukur 38
 dicukur rapi 38
 digunakan 21
 dihabiskan 44
 dihidangkan 11
 dijamin 36
 dijangka 26
 dikalangan 41
 dikarang 50
 dikejarkan 47
 di kelilingi 49
 dikerjakan 32
 dikhuatirkan 47
 dikunjungi 31
 dilakukan 42
 dilengkapi 45
 di luar 28
 dimainkan oleh 18
 dimana-mana saja 31
 dimasukkan 17
 dimestikan 43
 dinasihatkan 28
 dinding 5
 dipakai 34
 dipalang 22
 dipam 32
 dipancarkan 48
 dipancutkan air 32
 dipenuhi 38
 dipercik 44
 diperiksa 28
 diperlukan 32
 diperolehi 32
 dirawat 47
 diri 1
 di salah sebuah 15
 disalut dengan bijih timah 32
 di samping 28
 di sebelah kiri 45
 disediakan 11
 di seluruh 23
 Disember 20
 disesuaikan 46
 di sana sini 12
 di sini 11

disiram 32
 di situ, di sana 4
 disukai ramai 49
 ditanggalkan 32
 ditengah-tengah 29
 diterangi 29
 ditimbang 23
 ditutup(nya) 9, 11
 di waktu 7
 doktor, doktor gigi 47
 dua Int. 2, 16
 duabelas 1
 duapuluh 20
 duduk Int. 2
 duit 21
 dukacita 10
 dulang 9, 32
 dulu, dahulu 3
 dunia 25
 durian 4

E
 ekor 1
 eksport 31
 elok 44
 emas 19
 empat 1
 empatbelas 14
 enam 4
 enambelas 16
 enampuluh 14
 Encik 2
 epal 4
 Eropah 17
 erti 48
 eskalator 33
 esok 12

F
 faedah 48
 faham Int. 1
 Februari 25
 fesyen 9, 35
 fikir 8
 filem 14

G
 gagang 23
 gaji 9

gambar 5, 50
 menggambarkan 5, 50
 ganggu 48
 gangguan 48
 gangsa 32
 gantikan 45
 gantung 5, 48
 bergantung 48
 tergantung 5
 garpu 11
 gedung-gedung perniagaan 29
 gelap 36
 gelas 11
 gelombang 44
 gemar 48
 kegemaran 48
 gembira 6
 begitu gembira 6
 gemuk 42
 giat 41
 gigi 13, 47
 giliran 38
 goreng 11
 gugur 40
 gula 46
 gulai 11
 guna 42
 gunting 34
 gurindam 50
 guru Int. 1

H
 habis 44
 dihabiskan 44
 habuk 5
 had 45
 had laju 45
 hadap 48
 hadapan 3, 4, 11
 berhadapan dengan 5
 di hadapan 3
 hadiah 33
 halaman 16
 halus 32
 hampir 5
 berhampiran 5
 hantar 13

hanya 4
 harap 8
 harap beritahu 8
 harga 7, 50
 menghargai 50
 hari Int. 2
 selamat tengah hari
 Int. 2
 haribulan 19
 harijadi 20
 Hari Kebangsaan 31
 harum 31
 harus 43
 hasil 7
 hasil karya pelukis-pelukis tempatan 7
 hati 8
 sungguh tertarik hati 8
 helai 35
 hendak 16
 hendaklah 15
 hias 7
 menghias 7
 hidangan 11
 hidung 47
 hidup 42
 kehidupan 42
 hijau 36
 himpit 28
 hingga 9
 hisap 1
 menghisap 1
 hitam Int. 1
 piring hitam Int. 1
 hotel 15
 hubung 48
 hubungan perdagangan 46
 perhubungan 48
 hujung 9
 hutan 46

I
 ia 1
 iaitu 3
 ialah 1
 ibu 1
 ibunya 1

idap 47
 mengidap 47
 ikan 11
 ikatkan 26
 ikut 14, 48
 berikut 48
 imigresen 28
 pegawai imigresen 28
 inci 36
 indah 31, 50
 keindahan 50
 ingin 8
 ini Int. 1
 Instituti Pelajaran 31
 ipar 42
 isikan 16
 Isnin 12, 20
 istana 44
 isteri 1
 isterinya 7
 istimewa 36
 isyarat 29
 itik 42
 itu Int. 1

J
 jadi 47
 terjadi 47
 jaga 40
 menjaga 40
 jahit 35
 jalan 15, 41
 berjalan-jalan 15
 jalan kaki 41
 jalannya 19
 jalanraya 29
 jam 5, 25
 jam gerak 5
 jam tangan 19
 jambangan 7
 jambangan bunga 7
 jambu 3
 jangan 16
 janggut 38
 jangka 16
 jangkalaju 45
 jantung 47
 Januari 20
 jarang 4, 39

jauh 25
 perjalanan jauh 25
 jauhnya 30
 jawab Int. 2
 jawapan 2
 jemputlah 10
 jemputlah bersama-sama 10
 jenis 3
 jentera 45
 jeti 27
 jika 14
 jiran 9
 juga Int. 1
 Julai 20
 Juma'at 20
 jumlah 11
 jumpa 10, 14, 50
 berjumpa 10, 47
 perjumpaan 50
 Jun 19
 jurubahasa 15
 jururawat 47
 jurutrenkas 15
 juta 19

K
 kaca 45
 kacang 11
 kad 26
 kadang-kadang 14
 -kah Int. 2, 2
 kahwin 3
 berkahwin 3
 kain 5
 kain alas meja 11
 kain balut luka 47
 kain batik 35
 kain penampal luka 47
 kain sarong pelikat 35
 kakak 44
 kaki 3
 sekaki 3
 kakilima 29
 kalau 14
 kali 23, 39
 kali ini 9
 kambing 18, 42
 sop kambing 18

kamera 33
 kami 1
 kampung 9
 kamu 10
 kamus 37
 kanak-kanak 44
 kanan 5
 kandang 42
 kapal 25
 kapal korek 32
 kapal terbang 25
 kapas 46
 kapten 27
 karang 50
 dikarang 50
 pengarang 50
 karat 32
 kari 11
 kari ikan 11
 karib 7
 sahabat karib 7
 kartu 41
 karya 7
 hasil karya 7
 kasih Int. 2
 kastam 28
 kasut 34
 kata 50
 perkataan 50
 katakanlah 20
 katil 13
 kawan-kawan 14
 kawasan 3, 4
 kawasan luar bandar 3
 keadaan 43
 keadaannya 10
 kebanyakan(nya) 3
 keberatan 46
 kebetulan 20
 kebiasaan 17
 kebolehan(nya) 7
 kebun 3
 kebun sayur 3
 kecemasan 47
 kecewa 15
 kecil 1, 4
 kedai 13
 kedai baju 36
 kedai dobi 13

kedai gunting 39
 kedai jam 19
 kediaman 31
 rumah-rumah kediaman 31
 kedua-dua 18
 kegembiraan 48
 kegiatan 41
 kehabisan 45
 kehendaki 37
 kehidupan 42
 keindahan 31, 50
 kejar 47
 dikejarkan 47
 kekayaan 32
 kelab 14
 kelabu 36
 kelak 26
 kelamin 20
 kelapa 44
 kelas 15
 kelas satu 14
 kelasi 27
 keledak 3
 kelihatan 5, 45
 keliling 49
 dikelilingi 49
 keluar 25
 keluarga 1
 keluarga saya 1
 kemahuan 48
 kemajuan 12
 kemalangan 29, 47
 kemas 7
 kemas teratur 7
 kembalikan 21
 kembang 13, 50
 kemeja 13, 35
 kemik 45
 kemudahan 15
 kemudian 9
 kemukakan 46
 kenalkan 10
 kenderaan 25
 kenyang 12
 kepada 9
 kepala 11
 kepala meja 11

keperluan 31, 50
 kepunyaan 13
 kerana 5
 kerani 21
 kerani pos 21
 kerap 31, 50
 keras 47
 minuman keras 47
 kerbau 42
 kereta 16
 kereta bufe 26
 keretapi 1
 keretapi mainan 1
 kering 39
 keringkan 13
 kertas 21
 wang kertas 21
 kerusi Int. 2
 kerusi-meja 4
 kerusi panjang 5
 kerusi sandar 1
 kesalahan 28
 kesan 45
 tidak berkesan 45
 keseluruhannya 47
 kesemuanya 4
 kesihatan 28
 pegawai kesihatan 28
 kesukaan 35
 ketat 34
 ketawa 49
 ketetapan 46
 ketika 29
 ketuk 9
 diketuk 9
 mengetuk 10
 khabar Int. 2
 khabar baik Int. 2
 khamis 20
 khas 27
 khuatir 10, 36, 39, 47
 dikhuatirkan 47
 jangan khuatir 36
 kilang 31
 kilang penapis minyak 46
 kilang-kilang perusahaan 31
 kipas angin 46
 kira 4

kira-kira simpanan se-
 masa 22
 mengira 4
 kiraan suku 19
 kiri 5
 kita Int. 1
 kocek 35
 kolam 32
 kongsi 46
 perkongsian 46
 kopi 10
 kosong 18
 kotak 13
 kotor 13
 kuah 11
 kuasa 45, 48
 menguasai 48
 kubu 44
 kucing 1
 kuda 45
 kugiran 49
 kuih bingka 9
 kuih keria 9
 kuih-kuih 9
 kuih lapis 9
 kuih suji 12
 kulit 19, 34, 39
 kumpulan 17
 kunci 16
 kurang 3, 4
 lebih kurang 3, 4
 kursus 37
 Kursus Linguaphone 37
 kurus 47

L

lada 3
 ladang 42
 lagi 8
 lagu 18
 -lah Int. 2
 lahir 16
 di dilahirkan 19
 lain 5
 lain-lain 3
 laju 45
 had laju 45
 laki-laki, lelaki 1
 lakunan 49

lalu 12
 lalulintas 29
 lama 10, 25
 lambai 44
 lambat 20
 lampu 5, 29
 lampu berkaki 5
 lampu isyarat lalulintas
 29
 lampu letrik 3
 lampu neon 29
 lanjut 47
 langsir 5
 lantai 1
 lap 45
 lapan 1
 lapanbelas 18
 lapang 3
 lapangan terbang 27
 lapar 18
 lari 41
 latar belakang 49
 latih 48
 latihan 48
 lauk 11
 laut 28
 lautan 25
 lautan luas 28
 lawan 41
 lawatan 10
 lebih 1, 3, 4
 lebih daripada 36
 lebih kurang 3
 lebih lama 44
 lebih-lebih lagi 42
 lebih muda 1
 lebih tua 1
 lemah 47
 lembah 32
 lembu 42
 lembut 34, 39
 lengkap 45
 dilengkapi 45
 letak 5
 terletak 5
 letaknya 31
 lewat 16
 jangan lewat sangat
 16

lidah 46
 lif 15
 lihat Int. 1
 melihat Int. 1
 lima 3
 limabelas 3
 limapuluh 14
 limau 18
 loceng 9
 logam 32
 lori 29
 luar 3
 luarbandar 3, 4
 kawasan luarbandar 3
 luar negeri 28
 luas 28
 lubang 35
 luka 47
 kain balut luka 47
 lukisan 5
 lumba 41
 lumpur 32
 lurus 45
 luruskan 45
 lusa 20
 lutut 1
 berlutut 1

M

maaf 8
 mabok 28
 Mac 20
 mahal 5
 mahir 41, 48
 mahu 5
 main 1
 mainan 1
 bermain 1
 memainkan 48
 majallah 25
 majlis tari-menari 14
 maju 10
 makan 3, 4
 bilik makan 3
 makanan 11
 makanan-makanan 17
 makan angin 25
 makan malam 11
 makan pagi 11

makan tengah hari 11
 makanan yang dibuat
 daripada susu 46
 maktab 31
 malah 42
 malam 5
 waktu malam 5
 malang 47
 malas 38
 mampu 35
 belum mampu 35
 mana Int. 2
 di mana Int. 2
 manakala 27
 manakala dilihat 27
 mandi 3
 bilik mandi 3
 manggis 3, 4
 mangkuk 9
 manis-manisan 18
 manusia 48
 mari Int. 1
 mari kita Int. 1
 masa 15
 masa dahulu 42
 masa rehat 49
 masaalah 44
 masak 17
 dimasak 17
 maseh 1
 masing-masing 17
 masuk 5
 masyarakat 50
 masyhur 49
 matahari 5
 cahaya matahari 5
 matawang 21
 mati 47
 Mei 20
 meja Int. 1
 melalui 22
 melambai 27
 melanggar 45
 melawat 31
 melayani 33
 Melayu Int. 1
 melebihi 45
 meletakkan 11
 melihat Int. 1, 23

memahaminya 21
 memakai 13
 memandu 45
 memang 8
 memasangkan 46
 memasang lampu 13
 membaca 31
 membaca sajak 50
 membawa 9
 membayangkan 49
 membekalkan 40
 membeli 4
 membeli-belah 15
 memberhentikan 47
 membersihkan 42
 memberuskan 38
 membesar 34
 membetulkan 45
 membingungkan 21
 membolehkan 48
 membuang 23
 membuang masa 23
 membuat 22
 membuka 9, 22
 memelihara 42
 memerhatikan 25
 memesan 26
 memilih 17
 meminjamkan 15
 memotong 38, 45
 mempelajari 48
 memperkenalkan 9
 memperoses 32
 mempersilakan 9
 mempunyai 2, 17
 memudahkan 22
 memungkah 28
 memusing 48
 menaiki bas 14, 15, 25
 menaip 15
 menampung 45
 menanam 3
 menandakan 35
 menapis 1
 menari 14, 17
 menarik 13
 mencapai 12
 mencari 25, 44
 menceburkan diri 41

mencegah 32
 mencerun 32
 mencium 9
 mencuba 35
 mencuci 38
 mendaftar 15
 mendalam 50
 mendalami 50
 mendandan 39
 mendapat 15
 mendaratkan 27
 mendatangkan 40
 menempah 15, 35
 menemui 27
 menentukan 15, 35
 menerangi 7
 menerangkan 30
 menerusi 5
 menerusi tingkap 5
 meng- 1
 mengalir 32
 mengalu-alukan 9
 mengambil 13
 mengangkat 11
 mengangkut 32
 mengantuk 13
 mengapa 6
 mengarah 29
 mengejar 43
 mengelakkan 28, 29
 mengeluarkan 31
 mengemukakan 8
 mengeriting 38
 mengetahui 8
 mengetuk 10
 menggambarkan 33, 50
 mengganggu 24
 menggantikan 35
 menggosok 13
 menggunakan 15, 32
 menghadapi 11
 menghantarnya 23
 menghargai 50
 mengharungi 25
 menghidup 45
 menghilang 27
 mengidap 47
 mengiklankan 29
 mengikut 11

mengira 6
 mengirinkan 22
 menguasai 37
 mengucapkan 27
 mengunjung 49
 menguntungkan 43
 menguruskannya 22
 menikmati 31, 43
 meninggal dunia 33
 meninggalkan 27, 38
 menjadi 31
 menjaga 16, 40
 menjalankan 47
 menjengok 25
 menjual 29
 menolong 15
 menonton 14
 mentah 46
 menuju 3
 menunggang 25
 menunggu 13
 menunjukkan 16
 menurunkan 30
 menurut 17
 menyatakan 47
 menyeberang 29
 menyeberang jalan 29
 menyebut 19
 menyedarkan 5
 menyediakan 15
 menyelesaikan 28
 menyenangkan 38
 lebih menyenangkan 38
 menyiapkan 11
 menyuruh 35
 menyusahkan 45
 menyusahkan fikiran 45
 merah 23
 merancang 44
 merasa 12
 merbahaya 29
 merdu 18
 mereka 1, 9
 merokok 2
 merosakkan 50
 mesin taip 15
 mesti 12
 minat 49

minggu 9
 minit 9
 minum 9
 minuman 31, 49
 minuman keras 47
 minyak 7, 45
 cat minyak 7
 minyak geris 45
 minyak ubat 47
 minyak wangi 13
 misai 38
 misalnya 19
 miskin 43
 meskipun 21
 moden 8
 motobot 28
 motokar 3, 4
 motosikal 25
 molek 14
 muatan 27
 muda 1, 36
 termuda 1
 warna muda sangat 36
 mudah 18
 muka 13, 50
 terkemuka 50
 mula-mula 11
 mulai 39
 mulut 11, 47
 mungkin 14, 35
 murah 25
 murah sedikit 36
 musim 15
 musim buah 43
 musim cuti 15
 mutu 49
 bermutu 49
N
 nafas 47
 bernafas 47
 naik 44
 nama 1
 nampak 3
 nampaknya 10
 nanti 4
 nasi 11
 nasi goreng 18

nasihat 47
 naskhah 5
 negara 40
 negeri 12
 nenek 33
 nikmat 43
 nilai 22
 nilai tukarannya 22
 nipis 36
 nobel 37
 nombor 23
 November 20
 nya 1
 nyala 5
 nyalakan 5
 nyanyi Int. 1
 nyanyian 49
 nyaris 47
 nyenyak 13

O
 Ogos 20
 Oktober 20
 oleh 27
 oleh kerana 27
 orang Int. 1
 seorang Int. 1
 orang awam 23
 orang dewasa 50
 orang gaji 9
 orang-orang berjalan kaki 29
 orang ramai 27

P
 pada 1, 8
 pada kali ini 44
 pada keseluruhannya 8
 pada malam ini 12
 pada mulanya 21
 padamkan 13
 padang 41
 pagar 3, 27
 berpagar 3
 pagar kapal 27
 pagi Int. 1
 pagi tadi 35
 paip 1
 paip air 13

pajak 40
 pemajak 40
 pakai 13, 35
 pakaian 9
 pakaian tidur 13
 paling 10, 32
 pam 45
 pam air 32
 pam minyak 45
 panas 47
 pancar 48
 pancaragam 17
 pandai 7
 pandang 49
 pandangan 27
 pemandangan 49
 panggil 47
 panggong 49
 panjang 23, 24
 pantai 44
 pantas 23
 pantun 50
 papan 45
 papan penunjuk 45
 para-para 5
 para-para buku 5
 Parlimen 31
 paru-paru 47
 pas 27
 pasang 13
 pasangan 17
 pasar 31
 pasir 44
 paspot 28
 pasti 10
 pastikan 43
 patah 47
 pateri 32
 patut 15
 payung 3
 pedagang 40
 pegang Int. 1
 memegang Int. 1
 pegawai 28
 pejabat 14
 Pejabat Pos Besar 23
 Pejabat Taligram 23
 pekan 23
 pekat 18

pekerjaan 43
 pelabohan 27
 Pelabohan Kelang 27
 peladang 43
 pelajar Int. 1
 pelajaran 1
 pelajari 45
 pelakun 49
 pelancung 29
 pelanggan 38
 pelantar 25
 pelawat 27
 pelayan 17
 pelayaran 25
 pelebur 32
 peluang 40
 pelukis 7
 pemandangan 15
 pemandu 15
 pembangunan 31
 pembayaran 22
 pembeli 33
 pembetulan 35
 pembicara 48
 pembinaan 41
 pembuat-pembuat 32
 pemergian 27
 peminat 7, 49
 penampal 47
 kain penampal luka 47
 penat 13
 pencinta 50
 pendahuluan Int. 1
 pendandan rambut 38
 pendapat 8, 49
 berpendapat 8
 pendek 39
 pendekkan 36
 penduduk 31
 penerimaan 48
 pengajian 31
 tempat pengajian tinggi 31
 pengarang 50
 pengelap 45
 pengelap kasut 34
 pengertian 50
 penggunaan 50

penghalang 45
 besi penghalang depan 45
 penghantar taligram 23
 penghidupan 43
 pengkalan 27
 pengunjung 31, 49
 penjaga tiket 30
 penjual 33
 pentas 49
 pementasan 49
 penting 14
 penuh 3, 47
 penumpang 25
 penunjuk 45
 penunjuk minyak 45
 penyakit 47
 penyangkut 3
 penyangkut baju 3
 perabut 7
 peraduan 50
 peramah 33
 Perancis 22
 peraturan 45
 perbandingan 7
 bandingkan 7
 perbezaan 8
 perbualan 4
 berbual 4
 perbuatan 28
 percaya 8
 peredaran 21
 perempuan 1
 pergi 13
 perguruan 31
 perhentian bas 30
 perhiasan 44
 perhiasan rumah 44
 perkhidmatan 23
 perhubungan 48
 periksa 45
 peringkat 32
 perjalanan jauh 25
 perjanjian 46
 perjumpaan 50
 perkakas 45
 perkakas letrik 46
 perkataan 50
 perkembangan 50

perlahan Int. 1
 perlahan-lahan Int. 1
 perlawanan 41
 perlu 23, 50
 perlumbaan 41
 permaidani 5
 permainan 41
 permata 44
 permulaan 37
 buku permulaan 37
 pernah 10
 perniagaan 10, 46
 persediaan 45
 tayar persediaan 45
 pertama 1, 44
 pertama kali 12
 pertandingan 31
 pertanyaan Int. 2, 30
 pertolongan 47
 pertunjukkan 49
 perubahan 31, 43
 perumahan 31
 kawasan perumahan 31
 perusahaan 31
 pesat 12
 petak 27
 petang 10
 petani 42
 para petani 42
 peti Int. 1
 petinyanyi Int. 1
 petisejuk 46
 petisurat 23
 peti talvisyen 5
 pikul 42
 pilih 8
 pin baju 34
 pinggang 36
 pintu 3
 pintu pagar 3
 pipi 38
 piring Int. 1, 9
 piringhitam Int. 1
 pisang 11
 pisau 11
 plastik 34
 pohon 31
 pokok 3, 4

pokok buah-buahan 3
 politik 9
 pondok 31, 40
 posmen 23
 pos udara 23
 poter 15
 puan 2
 puisi 50
 puji 49
 pujian 49
 pukul 14
 pukul berapa 14
 pukul satu, jam satu 19
 pula 3, 4
 puluh 19
 pun 6
 punya 2
 mempunyai 2
 pusat 29
 pusat membeli belah 29
 pusing 48
 memusing 48
 putar 48
 putih 34

R
 Rabu 20
 radio 7
 ramai 3, 21
 orang ramai 21
 rambut 38
 rambutian 3, 4
 rancangan 44
 ratus 19
 rawat 47
 rawatan 47
 dirawat 47
 reban ayam 42
 rehat 26, 42
 rempah-rempah 17
 renda 33
 rendah 3
 rendang 31
 restoran 17
 ringgit 16
 rokok 2, 5
 tempat habok rokok 5
 ros 3

rosak 19, 50
 merosakkan 50
 roti 17
 ruang-ruang 32
 rumah 3, 4, 8
 rumah pangsa 3
 rumah persinggahan 44
 rumah tangga 8, 9
 rumah tumpangan 44
 rumah tumpangan kera-
 jaan 44
 rundingkan 46
 rupa 46
 merupakan 46
 rupiah 22

S
 saat 31
 Sabtu 9, 20
 sahabat 7
 sahabat karib 7
 sahaja, saja 2
 saiznya 36
 sajak 50
 sakit 47
 sakit gigi 47
 saksi 43
 salam 9
 bersalam 9
 saluran 48
 samada 25
 sama-sama 18
 sama seperti 15
 sambil 1, 9, 11
 sambut 49
 sambutan 15, 49
 sampai 26, 42
 sampul 24
 sampul surat 24
 sandar 5
 bantal sandar 5
 sandiwara 48
 sangat 1, 6
 sapu tangan 13
 sarapan 17
 sarung kaki 34
 sarung tangan 33

sastra 50
 kesusastraan 50
 sateh 18
 satu Int. 1
 saudara 9
 anak saudara 9
 sawah 42
 saya Int. 1
 sayang 10
 sayur 3
 sebab 14, 45
 sebagai 11
 sebagaimana 7
 sebahagian 32
 sebahagian besar 17
 sebanyak 22
 sebatang 13
 sebelah 5, 7
 sebelah kiri 5
 sebelas 11, 33
 sebelum 12, 28
 sebenarnya 10
 sebentar 22
 tunggu sebentar 22
 seberang 30
 seberang laut 33
 sebilah 13
 sebotol 13
 seburuk 47
 sebut 19
 secara besar-besaran 41
 secepat mungkin 16
 sedang Int. 1
 sedang duduk 5
 sedap 12
 sederhana 34
 sedia 11
 sediakan 12
 sedikit Int. 2
 segala 30
 segar 49
 segera 44
 seberapa segera 44
 segi 31
 sehelai 5
 sejam 45
 sejauh 45
 sejenis 8
 sejuk 17

sejurus 27
 sekali 1, 3
 sekalian 10
 sekarang Int. 1, 14
 sekeping 22
 sekeping wang kertas
 seratus ringgit 22
 seketika 27
 sekiranya 28
 sekitar 29
 sekolah 31, 44
 sekotak 13
 sekurang-kurangnya 12
 selain dari itu 25
 selama 8
 selamat Int. 1, 27
 selamat pagi Int. 1
 selamat petang 10
 selamat tinggal 27
 Selasa 20
 Selat Melaka 27
 selepas 9
 selera 17
 selipar 13
 seloka 50
 selsema 47
 seluar 35
 seluar panjang 35
 semalam 14
 semasa 22
 kira-kira simpanan
 semasa 22
 sembilan 9
 sembilan belas 19
 semboh 47
 semboyan 27
 semenanjung 31
 sementara 11
 sementara itu 45
 semerbak 31
 seminggu 14
 semoden 8
 semua 6
 sen 21
 senang 44
 sendiri 10
 sendirian 46
 sengaja 12
 senikata 48

senilakun 49
 senilukis 7
 pelukis 7
 senitari 49
 sentak 39
 sentiasa 15
 sepadan 35
 sepak 41
 sepak takraw 41
 sepanjang 13
 sepasang 35
 seperti 3, 4, 11
 September 20
 sepuluh 10
 sepupu 10
 sepupu-sepupunya 10
 serah 47
 serahkan 36
 seribu 19
 seringgit 24
 seronok 49
 serta 7
 sesiapa 6
 sesuai 32
 sesuaikah 24
 setahun 12
 setelah 9
 setengah 13
 setiap 17
 setinggi 2, 14
 setokin 13
 setuju 34
 setujuakah tuan 14
 seumpama 17
 sewa 16, 44
 siang 5
 siap 45
 siapkan 45
 siapa Int. 2
 siapakah Int. 2
 siaran 48
 sibuk 15
 sihat 10
 sikat 13
 sila Int. 1
 siling 5
 simpan 3, 4
 simpanan 22
 menyimpan 3

- singgah 44
 sistem 37
 situ, sana 4
 soalan 2
 stem 21
 stesyen 25
 stesyen keretapi 25
 suami 1
 suara 1, 48
 suatu 6
 sudah 12
 sudah tahu 43
 sudah tentu 15
 sudu 11
 sudut 13
 suka 4, 6
 sangat suka 6
 sukan 31
 suku 19
 kurang suku pukul
 sembilan 19
 sulit 13
 sumbangan 50
 sungai 32
 Sungai Kinta 32
 sungguh 8
 sungguhpun 7
 sungguh-sungguh 42
 sunyi 16, 42
 sup 11
 sup kambing 18
 sup ayam 18
 supaya 17
 surat 1
 surat berdaftar 24
 surat biasa 24
 surat khabar 5
 surat suntik 28
 susah 19, 47
 menyusahkan 47
 susu 18, 46
 syampo 39
 syarahan 48
 syarikat 27
 syiling 20
 T
 tahniah 14, 20
 tahu 6
 tahukah 20
 tahun 1
 tak, tidak 12
 taligram 23
 tali leher 13
 talipun 18
 talivisyen 6
 taman 3, 4
 taman orang ramai 49
 tambah 48
 tambahan 37, 48
 bacaan tambahan 37
 tambang 30
 tampalkan 45
 tanah 3
 tanahair 50
 tanam 3, 4
 tanaman 3, 4
 ditanam 4
 menanam 3, 4
 tanda 16
 tanda tangan 16
 tandas 3
 tangan Int. 1, 9, 13
 tangga 3, 8
 anak tangga 8
 berumah tangga 8
 tangki 13, 45
 tanpa 25
 tarik 16
 tarikh 16
 tasek 31
 tawar menawar 40
 tawaran 46
 tayang 49
 menayang 49
 tayar 45
 tayar persediaan 45
 tebal 36
 tebing sungai 32
 teh 9
 tekan 48
 tekanan 45
 tekanan angin tayar 45
 teknikal 31
 teksi 29
 tekun 9
 telah 8
 telinga 48
 telur 17, 42
 temasya 44
 bertemasya 44
 tembaga 21
 tembaga puteh 32
 tembikar 33
 tempat 3, 4
 tempat duduk 49
 tempat habuk rokok 5
 tempat menyimpan
 barang 45
 tempat menyimpan
 motokar 3
 tempat tumpuan 31
 tempatan 7, 31
 temuduga 46
 tenaga 45
 tengah Int. 2, 19
 tengah hari 19
 tengah malam 19
 tengkuk 47
 tentang 4
 tentu Int. 1
 tepat 13, 19
 tepi 3, 5
 tepi jalan 23
 ter- 1
 terang 19
 terasa 13
 teratur 7
 terbaru 9
 terbuka 43
 tergantung 5
 tergelincir 45
 tergesa-gesa 25
 tergopoh-gapah 25
 terhidang 12
 terima Int. 2
 terima kasih Int. 2
 terjadi 47
 terjemah 48
 terjemahan 48
 terkejut 33
 terkemuka 50
 terkenal 7
 terlalu 4
 terlebih dahulu 28
 terlewat 25
 terlindung 6
 termasuk 4
 terpaksa 25
 terpegun 48
 terpenting 29
 tersebut 9
 tertarik 8
 sungguh tertarik 8
 tetamu 3, 31
 bilik tetamu 3
 tetamu kehormat 31
 tetap 16
 tetapi 3, 4
 teruk 45
 tidak begitu teruk 45
 terung 3
 terus 13
 terutama 15
 tiang 29
 tiang lampu 29
 tiap-tiap 11
 tiap-tiap seorang 11
 tiba 9
 tidak Int. 1
 tidak berkesan 45
 tidak mengapa 18, 36
 tidur 3, 4
 bilik tidur 3
 tertidur 13
 tiga 3, 4
 tigabelas 13
 tikar 5
 tiket 15
 tempat jual tiket 26
 tiket pergi balek 26
 timah 32
 timun 3
 timur 44
 pantai timur 44
 tin 40
 tinggal 3, 4, 27
 selamat tinggal 27
 tertinggal 32
 tinggi 31
 tingkap 1, 5
 tingkat 3, 4
 tingkat atas 3, 4
 tingkat bawah 3, 4
 tinju 41
 Tionghoa 50
 tolong 18
 tonton 48
 topi 3
 tua 1
 tertua 1
 tuala 11
 tuan Int. 1, 11
 tuan rumah 11
 tuang 28
 tugu peringatan kebang-
 saan 7
 tuju 3
 menuju 3
 tujuh, tujuh 4
 tujuhbelas 10
 tukang 35
 tukang gunting 38
 tukang jahit baju 35
 tukar 13
 tulis Int. 1
 menulis Int. 1
 sedang menulis 1
 tumit 34
 tumit rendah 34
 tumit tinggi 34
 tumpangi 28
 tunai 22
 cek tunai 22
 tunggu 16
 tunjuk 48
 tunjukkan 24
 papan penunjuk 45
 turun 27, 30
 turut 41
 tutup Int. 2, 5, 13
 tertutup Int. 2
 tutup langsir 5
 U
 ubah 43
 perubahan 43
 ubahnya 12
 ubat sapu 47
 ubat-ubat 46
 ucapkan 14
 udang 11
 udara 23
 pos udara 23
 uji 45
 ukuran 35
 ulangtahun 14
 ulangtahun perkahwinan
 14
 ulasan 48
 umpamanya 19
 umur 1
 umurnya 2
 universiti 31
 untuk 11
 upacara sambutan 31
 upahnya 36
 urusan 12, 46
 urusan perniagaan 12
 usaha 32
 utama 17
 W
 wakil 46
 waktu 5
 walaupun 42
 wang 18
 wangi 13
 wanita 39
 warnanya 36
 wayang gambar 14
 Y
 ya Int. 2
 yang Int. 2
 yang lalu 12
 yang mana Int. 2, 37
 yang terbaharu sekali 36